Multiplicative number theory: The pretentious approach

Andrew Granville

K. Soundararajan

To Marci and Waheeda

Preface

AG to work on: sort out / finalize? part 1. Sort out what we discuss about Halasz once the paper has been written. Ch3.3, 3.10 (Small gaps)and then all the Linnik stuff to be cleaned up; i.e. all of chapter 4. Sort out 5.6, 5.7 and chapter 6 !

Riemann's seminal 1860 memoir showed how questions on the distribution of prime numbers are more-or-less equivalent to questions on the distribution of zeros of the Riemann zeta function. This was the starting point for the beautiful theory which is at the heart of analytic number theory. Until now there has been no other coherent approach that was capable of addressing all of the central issues of analytic number theory.

In this book we present the pretentious view of analytic number theory; allowing us to recover the basic results of prime number theory *without* use of zeros of the Riemann zeta-function and related L-functions, and to improve various results in the literature. This approach is certainly more flexible than the classical approach since it allows one to work on many questions for which L-function methods are not suited. However there is no beautiful explicit formula that promises to obtain the strongest believable results (which is the sort of thing one obtains from the Riemann zeta-function). So why *pretentious*?

• It is an intellectual challenge to see how much of the classical theory one can reprove without recourse to the more subtle L-function methodology (For a long time, top experts had believed that it is impossible is prove the prime number theorem without an analysis of zeros of analytic continuations. Selberg and Erdős refuted this prejudice but until now, such methods had seemed *ad hoc*, rather than part of a coherent theory).

• Selberg showed how sieve bounds can be obtained by optimizing values over a wide class of combinatorial objects, making them a very flexible tool. Pretentious methods allow us to introduce analogous flexibility into many problems where the issue is not the properties of a very specific function, but rather of a broad class of functions.

• This flexibility allows us to go further in many problems than classical methods alone, as we shall see in the latter chapters of this book.

The Riemann zeta-function $\zeta(s)$ is defined when $\mathrm{Re}(s) > 1$; and then it is given a value for each $s \in \mathbb{C}$ by the theory of analytic continuation. Riemann pointed to the study of the zeros of $\zeta(s)$ on the line where $\mathrm{Re}(s) = 1/2$. However we have few methods that truly allow us to say much so far away from the original domain of definition. Indeed almost all of the unconditional results in the literature are about understanding zeros with $\mathrm{Re}(s)$ very close to 1. Usually the methods used to do so, can be viewed as an extrapolation of our strong understanding of $\zeta(s)$ when $\mathrm{Re}(s) > 1$. This suggests that, in proving these results, one can perhaps dispense with an analysis of the values of $\zeta(s)$ with $\mathrm{Re}(s) \leq 1$, which is, in effect, what we do.

Our original goal in the first part of this book was to recover all the main results of Davenport"s *Multiplicative Number Theory* MR1790423 [?] by pretentious methods, and then to prove as much as possible of the result of classical literature, such as the results in MR891718 [?]. It turns out that pretentious methods yield a much easier proof of Linnik's Theorem, and quantitatively yield much the same quality of results throughout the subject.

However Siegel's Theorem, giving a lower bound on $|L(1,\chi)|$, is one result that we have little hope of addressing without considering zeros of L-functions. The difficulty is that all proofs of his lower bound run as follows: Either the Generalized Riemann Hypothesis (GRH) is true, in which case we have a good lower bound, or the GRH is false, in which case we have a lower bound in terms of the first counterexample to GRH. Classically this explains the inexplicit constants in analytic number theory (evidently Siegel's lower bound cannot be made explicit unless another proof is found, or GRH is resolved) and, without a fundamentally different proof, we have little hope of avoiding zeros. Instead we give a proof, due to Pintz, that is formulated in terms of multiplicative functions and a putative zero.

Although this is the first coherent account of this theory, our work rests on ideas that have been around for some time, and the contributions of many authors. The central role in our development belongs to Halász's Theorem. Much is based on the results and perspectives of Paul Erdős and Atle Selberg. Other early authors include Wirsing, Halász, Daboussi and Delange. More recent influential authors include Elliott, Hall, Hildebrand, Iwaniec, Montgomery and Vaughan, Pintz, and Tenenbaum. In addition, Tenenbaum's book MR1366197 [?] gives beautiful insight into multiplicative functions, often from a classical perspective.

Our own thinking has developed in part thanks to conversations with our collaborators John Friedlander, Régis de la Bréteche, and Antal Balog. We are particularly grateful to Dimitris Koukoulopoulos and Adam Harper who have been working with us while we have worked on this book, and proved several results that we needed, when we needed them! Various people have contributed to our development of this book by asking the right questions or making useful mathematical remarks – in this vein we would like to thank Jordan Ellenberg, Hugh Montgomery.

The exercises: In order to really learn the subject the keen student should try to fully answer the exercises. We have marked several with † if they are difficult, and occasionally †† if extremely difficult. The † questions are probably too difficult except for well-prepared students. Some exercises are embedded in the text and need to be completed to fully understand the text; there are many other exercises at the end of each chapter. At a minimum the reader might attempt the exercises embedded in the text as well as those at the end of each chapter with are marked with *.

Contents

Part 1

Introductory results

In the the first four chapters we introduce well-known results of analytic number theory, from a perspective that will be useful in the remainder of the book.

CHAPTER 1.1

The prime number theorem

As a boy Gauss determined, from studying the primes up to three million, that the density of primes around x is $1/\log x$, leading him to conjecture that the number of primes up to x is well-approximated by the estimate

PNT
$$\pi(x) := \sum_{p \le x} 1 \sim \frac{x}{\log x}. \tag{1.1.1}$$

It is less intuitive, but simpler, to weight each prime with $\log p$; and to include the prime powers in the sum (which has little impact on the size). Thus we define the *von Mangoldt function*

vM
$$\Lambda(n) := \begin{cases} \log p & \text{if } n = p^m, \text{ where } p \text{ is prime, and } m \ge 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise,} \end{cases} \tag{1.1.2}$$

and then, in place of (1.1.1), we conjecture that

PNT2
$$\psi(x) := \sum_{n \le x} \Lambda(n) \sim x. \tag{1.1.3}$$

The equivalent estimates (1.1.1) and (1.1.3), known as the *prime number theorem*, are difficult to prove. In this chapter we show how the prime number theorem is equivalent to understanding the mean value of the Möbius function. This will motivate our study of multiplicative functions in general, and provide new ways of looking at many of the classical questions in analytic number theory.

1.1.1. Partial Summation

Given a sequence of complex numbers a_n, and some function $f : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{C}$, we wish to determine the value of

$$\sum_{n=A+1}^{B} a_n f(n)$$

from estimates for the partial sums $S(t) := \sum_{k \le t} a_k$. Usually f is continuously differentiable on $[A, B]$, so we can replace our sum by the appropriate Riemann-Stieltjes integral, and then integrate by parts as follows:[1]

PS2
$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{A < n \le B} a_n f(n) &= \int_{A^+}^{B^+} f(t) d(S(t)) = [S(t)f(t)]_A^B - \int_A^B S(t) f'(t) dt \\ &= S(B)f(B) - S(A)f(A) - \int_A^B S(t) f'(t) dt. \end{aligned} \tag{1.1.4}$$

(Note that (1.1.4) continues to hold for all non-negative real numbers $A < B$).

[1] The notation "t^+" denotes a real number "marginally" larger than t.

In Abel's approach one does not need to make any assumption about f: Simply write $a_n = S(n) - S(n-1)$, so that

$$\sum_{n=A+1}^{B} a_n f(n) = \sum_{n=A+1}^{B} f(n)(S(n) - S(n-1)),$$

and with a little rearranging we obtain

PS1

$$\sum_{n=A+1}^{B} a_n f(n) = S(B)f(B) - S(A)f(A) - \sum_{n=A}^{B-1} S(n)(f(n+1) - f(n)). \tag{1.1.5}$$

If we now suppose that f is continuously differentiable on $[A, B]$ (as above) then we can rewrite (1.1.5) as (1.1.4).

EXERCISE 1.1.1. Use partial summation to show that (1.1.1) is equivalent to

PNT3

$$\theta(x) = \sum_{p \le x} \log p = x + o(x); \tag{1.1.6}$$

and then show that both are equivalent to (1.1.3).

The Riemann zeta function is given by

$$\zeta(s) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^s} = \prod_p \left(1 - \frac{1}{p^s}\right)^{-1} \quad \text{for } \mathrm{Re}(s) > 1.$$

This definition is restricted to the region $\mathrm{Re}(s) > 1$, since it is only there that this Dirichlet series and this Euler product both converge absolutely (see the next subsection for definitions).

zeta

EXERCISE 1.1.2. (i) Prove that for $\mathrm{Re}(s) > 1$

$$\zeta(s) = s \int_1^{\infty} \frac{[y]}{y^{s+1}} dy = \frac{s}{s-1} - s \int_1^{\infty} \frac{\{y\}}{y^{s+1}} dy.$$

where throughout we write $[t]$ for the integer part of t, and $\{t\}$ for its fractional part (so that $t = [t] + \{t\}$).

The right hand side is an analytic function of s in the region $\mathrm{Re}(s) > 0$ except for a simple pole at $s = 1$ with residue 1. Thus we have an analytic continuation of $\zeta(s)$ to this larger region, and near $s = 1$ we have the Laurent expansion

$$\zeta(s) = \frac{1}{s-1} + \gamma + c_1(s-1) + \dots .$$

(The value of the constant γ is given in exercise 1.1.4.)

(ii) Deduce that $\zeta(1 + \frac{1}{\log x}) = \log x + \gamma + O_{x\to\infty}(\frac{1}{\log x})$.

(iii) † Adapt the argument in Exercise 1.1.5 to obtain an analytic continuation of $\zeta(s)$ to the region $\mathrm{Re}(s) > -1$.

(iv) † Generalize.

1.1.2. Chebyshev's elementary estimates

Chebyshev made significant progress on the distribution of primes by showing that there are constants $0 < c < 1 < C$ with

Cheb1
$$(c + o(1))\frac{x}{\log x} \le \pi(x) \le (C + o(1))\frac{x}{\log x}. \tag{1.1.7}$$

Moreover he showed that if

$$\lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{\pi(x)}{x/\log x}$$

exists, then it must equal 1.

The key to obtaining such information is to write the prime factorization of n in the form

$$\log n = \sum_{d|n} \Lambda(d).$$

Summing both sides over n (and re-writing "$d|n$" as "$n = dk$"), we obtain that

Cheb2
$$\sum_{n\le x} \log n = \sum_{n\le x}\sum_{n=dk} \Lambda(d) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \psi(x/k). \tag{1.1.8}$$

Using Stirling's formula, Exercise 1.1.5, we deduce that

Cheb3
$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \psi(x/k) = x\log x - x + O(\log x). \tag{1.1.9}$$

Exercise 1.1.3. Use (1.1.9) to prove that

$$\limsup_{x\to\infty} \frac{\psi(x)}{x} \ge 1 \ge \liminf_{x\to\infty} \frac{\psi(x)}{x},$$

so that if $\lim_{x\to\infty} \psi(x)/x$ exists it must be 1.

To obtain Chebyshev's estimates (1.1.7), take (1.1.8) at $2x$ and subtract twice that relation taken at x. This yields

$$x\log 4 + O(\log x) = \psi(2x) - \psi(2x/2) + \psi(2x/3) - \psi(2x/4) + \ldots,$$

and upper and lower estimates for the right hand side above follow upon truncating the series after an odd or even number of steps. In particular we obtain that

$$\psi(2x) \ge x\log 4 + O(\log x),$$

which gives the lower bound of (1.1.7) with $c = \log 2$ a permissible value. And we also obtain that

$$\psi(2x) - \psi(x) \le x\log 4 + O(\log x),$$

which, when used at $x/2, x/4, \ldots$ and summed, leads to $\psi(x) \le x\log 4 + O((\log x)^2)$. Thus we obtain the upper bound in (1.1.7) with $C = \log 4$ a permissible value.

Returning to (1.1.8), we may recast it as

$$\sum_{n\le x} \log n = \sum_{d\le x} \Lambda(d) \sum_{k\le x/d} 1 = \sum_{d\le x} \Lambda(d)\Big(\frac{x}{d} + O(1)\Big).$$

Using Stirling's formula, and the recently established $\psi(x) = O(x)$, we conclude that

$$x\log x + O(x) = x\sum_{d\le x} \frac{\Lambda(d)}{d},$$

or in other words

Pavg

$$\sum_{p\le x}\frac{\log p}{p}=\sum_{n\le x}\frac{\Lambda(n)}{n}+O(1)=\log x+O(1). \tag{1.1.10}$$

In this proof we see interplay between algebra (summing the identity $\log n = \sum_{d|n}\Lambda(d)$) and analysis (evaluating $\log [x]!$ using Stirling's formula), which foreshadows much of what is to come.

1.1.3. Multiplicative functions and Dirichlet series

The main objects of study in this book are *multiplicative functions*. These are functions $f:\mathbb{N}\to\mathbb{C}$ satisfying $f(mn)=f(m)f(n)$ for all coprime integers m and n. If the relation $f(mn)=f(m)f(n)$ holds for all integers m and n we say that f is *completely multiplicative*. If $n=\prod_j p_j^{\alpha_j}$ is the prime factorization of n, where the primes p_j are distinct, then $f(n)=\prod_j f(p_j^{\alpha_j})$ for multiplicative functions f. Thus a multiplicative function is specified by its values at prime powers and a completely multiplicative function is specified by its values at primes.

One can study the multiplicative function $f(n)$ using the *Dirichlet series*,

$$F(s)=\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{f(n)}{n^s}=\prod_p\Big(1+\frac{f(p)}{p^s}+\frac{f(p^2)}{p^{2s}}+\dots\Big).$$

The product over primes above is called an *Euler product*, and viewed formally the equality of the Dirichlet series and the Euler product above is a restatement of the unique factorization of integers into primes. If we suppose that the multiplicative function f does not grow rapidy – for example, that $|f(n)|\ll n^A$ for some constant A – then the Dirichlet series and Euler product will converge absolutely in some half-plane with $\mathrm{Re}(s)$ suitably large.

Given any two functions f and g from $\mathbb{N}\to\mathbb{C}$ (not necessarily multiplicative), their *Dirichlet convolution* $f*g$ is defined by

$$(f*g)(n)=\sum_{ab=n}f(a)g(b).$$

If $F(s)=\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}f(n)n^{-s}$ and $G(s)=\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}g(n)n^{-s}$ are the associated Dirichlet series, then the convolution $f*g$ corresponds to their product:

$$F(s)G(s)=\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{(f*g)(n)}{n^s}.$$

The basic multiplicative functions and their associated Dirichlet series are:

• The function $\delta(1)=1$ and $\delta(n)=0$ for all $n\ge 2$ has the associated Dirichlet series 1.

• The function $1(n)=1$ for all $n\in\mathbb{N}$ has the associated Dirichlet series $\zeta(s)$ which converges absolutely when $\mathrm{Re}(s)>1$, and whose analytic continuation we discussed in Exercise zeta 1.1.2.

• For a natural number k, the k-divisor function $d_k(n)$ counts the number of ways of writing n as $a_1\cdots a_k$. That is, d_k is the k-fold convolution of the function $1(n)$, and its associated Dirichlet series is $\zeta(s)^k$. The function $d_2(n)$ is called the *divisor function* and denoted simply by $d(n)$. More generally, for any complex number z, the z-th divisor function $d_z(n)$ is defined as the coefficient of $1/n^s$ in the Dirichlet series, $\zeta(s)^z$.[2]

• The *Möbius function* $\mu(n)$ is defined to be 0 if n is divisible by the square of some prime and, if n is square-free, $\mu(n)$ is 1 or -1 depending on whether n has an even or odd number of prime factors. The associated Dirichlet series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \mu(n)n^{-s} = \zeta(s)^{-1}$ so that μ is the same as d_{-1}. We deduce that $\mu * 1 = \delta$.

• The von Mangoldt function $\Lambda(n)$ is not multiplicative, but is of great interest to us. We write its associated Dirichlet series as $L(s)$. Since

$$\log n = \sum_{d|n} \Lambda(d) = (1 * \Lambda)(n)$$

hence $-\zeta'(s) = L(s)\zeta(s)$, that is $L(s) = (-\zeta'/\zeta)(s)$. Writing this as

$$\frac{1}{\zeta(s)} \cdot (-\zeta'(s))$$

we deduce that

Lammu

$$\Lambda(n) = (\mu * \log)(n) = \sum_{ab=n} \mu(a) \log b. \tag{1.1.11}$$

As mentioned earlier, our goal in this chapter is to show that the prime number theorem is equivalent to a statement about the mean value of the multiplicative function μ. We now formulate this equivalence precisely.

exception is when $n = m^2$ and the divisor m cannot be so paired. Since a or n/a must be $\le \sqrt{n}$ we have

$$d(n) = \sum_{d|n} 1 = 2 \sum_{\substack{d|n \\ d<\sqrt{n}}} 1 + \delta_n,$$

where $\delta_n = 1$ if n is a square, and 0 otherwise. Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{n\le x} d(n) &= 2 \sum_{n\le x} \sum_{\substack{d|n \\ d<\sqrt{n}}} 1 + \sum_{\substack{n\le x \\ n=d^2}} 1 \\ &= \sum_{d\le\sqrt{x}} \Big(1 + 2 \sum_{\substack{d^2<n\le x \\ d|n}} 1\Big) \\ &= \sum_{d\le\sqrt{x}} \left(2[x/d] - 2d + 1\right), \end{aligned}$$

and so

$$\sum_{n\le x} d(n) = 2x \sum_{d\le\sqrt{x}} \frac{1}{d} - x + O(\sqrt{x}) = x\log x - x + 2\gamma x + O(\sqrt{x}), \tag{1.1.13}$$

by Exercise 1.1.4.

The method described above is called the *hyperbola method* because we are trying to count the number of lattice points (a, b) with a and b non-negative and lying below the hyperbola $ab = x$. Dirichlet's idea may be thought of as choosing parameters A, B with $AB = x$, and dividing the points under the hyperbola according to whether $a \le A$ or $b \le B$ or both. We remark that an outstanding open problem, known as the Dirichlet divisor problem, is to show that the error term in (1.1.13) may be improved to $O(x^{\frac{1}{4}+\epsilon})$ (for any fixed $\epsilon > 0$).

For our subsequent work, we use Exercise 1.1.5 to recast (1.1.13) as

$$\sum_{n\le x} (\log n - d(n) + 2\gamma) = O(\sqrt{x}). \tag{1.1.14}$$

1.1.5. The prime number theorem and the Möbius function: proof of Theorem 1.1.1

First we show that the estimate $M(x) = \sum_{n\le x} \mu(n) = o(x)$ implies the prime number theorem $\psi(x) = x + o(x)$.

Define the arithmetic function $a(n) = \log n - d(n) + 2\gamma$, so that

$$a(n) = (1 * (\Lambda - 1))(n) + 2\gamma 1(n).$$

When we form the Dirichlet convolution of a with the Möbius function we therefore obtain

$$(\mu * a)(n) = (\mu * 1 * (\Lambda - 1))(n) + 2\gamma(\mu * 1)(n) = (\Lambda - 1)(n) + 2\gamma\delta(n),$$

where $\delta(1) = 1$, and $\delta(n) = 0$ for $n > 1$. Hence, when we sum $(\mu * a)(n)$ over all $n \le x$, we obtain

$$\sum_{n\le x} (\mu * a)(n) = \sum_{n\le x} (\Lambda(n) - 1) + 2\gamma = \psi(x) - x + O(1).$$

On the other hand, we may write the left hand side above as

$$\sum_{dk\le x}\mu(d)a(k),$$

and, as in the hyperbola method, split this into terms where $k\le K$ or $k>K$ (in which case $d\le x/K$). Thus we find that

$$\sum_{dk\le x}\mu(d)a(k)=\sum_{k\le K}a(k)M(x/k)+\sum_{d\le x/K}\mu(d)\sum_{K<k\le x/d}a(k).$$

Using (1.1.14) we see that the second term above is

$$=O\Big(\sum_{d\le x/K}\sqrt{x/d}\Big)=O(x/\sqrt{K}).$$

Putting everything together, we deduce that

$$\psi(x)-x=\sum_{k\le K}a(k)M(x/k)+O(x/\sqrt{K}).$$

Now suppose that $M(x)=o(x)$. Fix $\epsilon>0$ and select K to be the smallest integer $>1/\epsilon^2$, and then let $\alpha_K:=\sum_{k\le K}|a(k)|/k$. Finally choose y_ϵ so that $|M(y)|\le(\epsilon/\alpha_k)y$ whenever $y\ge y_\epsilon$. Inserting all this into the last line for $x\ge Ky_\epsilon$ yields $\psi(x)-x\ll(\epsilon/\alpha_k)x\sum_{k\le K}|a(k)|/k+\epsilon x\ll\epsilon x$. We may conclude that $\psi(x)-x=o(x)$, the prime number theorem.

Now we turn to the converse. Consider the arithmetic function $-\mu(n)\log n$ which is the coefficient of $1/n^s$ in the Dirichlet series $(1/\zeta(s))'$. Since

$$\Big(\frac{1}{\zeta(s)}\Big)'=-\frac{\zeta'(s)}{\zeta(s)^2}=-\frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(s)\cdot\frac{1}{\zeta(s)},$$

we obtain the identity $-\mu(n)\log n=(\mu*\Lambda)(n)$. As $\mu*1=\delta$, we find that

Pr51 (1.1.15)
$$\sum_{n\le x}(\mu*(\Lambda-1))(n)=-\sum_{n\le x}\mu(n)\log n-1.$$

The right hand side of (1.1.15) is

$$-\log x\sum_{n\le x}\mu(n)+\sum_{n\le x}\mu(n)\log(x/n)-1=-(\log x)M(x)+O\Big(\sum_{n\le x}\log(x/n)\Big)$$
$$=-(\log x)M(x)+O(x),$$

upon using Exercise 1.1.5. The left hand side of (1.1.15) is

$$\sum_{ab\le x}\mu(a)(\Lambda(b)-1)=\sum_{a\le x}\mu(a)\Big(\psi(x/a)-x/a\Big).$$

Now suppose that $\psi(x)-x=o(x)$, the prime number theorem, so that, for given $\epsilon>0$ we have $|\psi(t)-t|\le\epsilon t$ if $t\ge T_\epsilon$. Suppose that $T\ge T_\epsilon$ and $x>T^{1/\epsilon}$. Using this $|\psi(x/a)-x/a|\le\epsilon x/a$ for $a\le x/T$ (so that $x/a>T$), and the Chebyshev estimate $|\psi(x/a)-x/a|\ll x/a$ for $x/T\le a\le x$, we find that the left hand side of (1.1.15) is

$$\ll\sum_{a\le x/T}\epsilon x/a+\sum_{x/T\le a\le x}x/a\ll\epsilon x\log x+x\log T.$$

Combining these observations, we find that

$$|M(x)| \ll \epsilon x + x\frac{\log T}{\log x} \ll \epsilon x,$$

if x is sufficiently large. Since ϵ was arbitrary, we have demonstrated that $M(x) = o(x)$.

1.1.6. Selberg's formula

The elementary techniques discussed above were brilliantly used by Selberg to get an asymptotic formula for a suitably weighted sum of primes and products of two primes. *Selberg's formula* then led Erdős and Selberg to discover elementary proofs of the prime number theorem. We will not discuss these elementary proofs of the prime number theorem here, but let us see how Selberg's formula follows from the ideas developed so far.

The left hand side is

$$\sum_{k\le x}\mu(k)\sum_{l\le x/k}b(l)\ll\sum_{k\le x}(x/k)^{2/3+\epsilon}\ll x$$

by (Pr61 1.1.16), and we conclude that

$$\sum_{n\le x}\Lambda_2(n)=2x\log x+O(x).$$

The difference between the left hand side above and the left hand side of our desired formula is the contribution of the prime powers, which is easily shown to be $\ll\sqrt{x}\log x$, and so our Theorem follows. □

1.1.7. Exercises

ex:harmonic

Exercise 1.1.4. * (i) Using partial summation, prove that for any $x\ge 1$

$$\sum_{1\le n\le x}\frac{1}{n}=\log x+\frac{[x]}{x}-\int_1^x\frac{\{t\}}{t^2}dt.$$

(ii) Deduce that for any $x\ge 1$ we have the approximation

$$\left|\sum_{n\le x}\frac{1}{n}-(\log x+\gamma)\right|\le\frac{1}{x},$$

where γ is the *Euler-Mascheroni constant*,

$$\gamma:=\lim_{N\to\infty}\Big(\sum_{n=1}^{N}\frac{1}{n}-\log N\Big)=1-\int_1^\infty\frac{\{t\}}{t^2}dt.$$

ex:stirling

Exercise 1.1.5. (i) For an integer $N\ge 1$ show that

$$\log N!=N\log N-N+1+\int_1^N\frac{\{t\}}{t}dt.$$

(ii) Deduce that $x-1\ge\sum_{n\le x}\log(x/n)\ge x-2-\log x$ for all $x\ge 1$.

(iii) Using that $\int_1^x(\{t\}-1/2)dt=(\{x\}^2-\{x\})/2$ and integrating by parts, show that

$$\int_1^N\frac{\{t\}}{t}dt=\frac{1}{2}\log N-\frac{1}{2}\int_1^N\frac{\{t\}-\{t\}^2}{t^2}dt.$$

(iv) Conclude that $N!=C\sqrt{N}(N/e)^N\{1+O(1/N)\}$, where

$$C=\exp\Big(1-\frac{1}{2}\int_1^\infty\frac{\{t\}-\{t\}^2}{t^2}dt\Big).\text{ In fact }C=\sqrt{2\pi},$$

and the resulting asymptotic for $N!$, namely $N!\sim\sqrt{2\pi N}(N/e)^N$, is known as *Stirling's formula*.

zeta2

Exercise 1.1.6. *

(i) Prove that for $\mathrm{Re}(s)>0$ we have

$$\sum_{n=1}^{N}\frac{1}{n^s}-\int_1^N\frac{dt}{t^s}=\zeta(s)-\frac{1}{s-1}+s\int_N^\infty\frac{\{y\}}{y^{s+1}}dy.$$

(ii) Deduce that, in this same range but with $s \neq 1$, we can define

$$\zeta(s) = \lim_{N\to\infty} \left\{ \sum_{n=1}^{N} \frac{1}{n^s} - \frac{N^{1-s}}{1-s} \right\}.$$

ex:Bertrand

EXERCISE 1.1.7. * Using that $\psi(2x) - \psi(x) + \psi(2x/3) \geq x \log 4 + O(\log x)$, prove Bertrand's postulate that there is a prime between N and $2N$, for N sufficiently large.

ex:Cheb

EXERCISE 1.1.8. (i) Using (Cheb2 1.1.8), prove that if $L(x) := \sum_{n\leq x} \log n$ then

$$\psi(x) - \psi(x/6) \leq L(x) - L(x/2) - L(x/3) - L(x/5) + L(x/30) \leq \psi(x).$$

(ii) Deduce, using (Cheb3 1.1.9), that with

$$\kappa = \frac{\log 2}{2} + \frac{\log 3}{3} + \frac{\log 5}{5} - \frac{\log 30}{30} = 0.9212920229\ldots,$$

we have $\kappa x + O(\log x) \leq \psi(x) \leq \frac{6}{5}\kappa x + O(\log^2 x)$.

(iii) † Improve on these bounds by similar methods.

Pavg+

EXERCISE 1.1.9. (i) Use partial summation to prove that if

$$\lim_{N\to\infty} \sum_{n\leq N} \frac{\Lambda(n) - 1}{n} \quad \text{exists,}$$

then the prime number theorem, in the form $\psi(x) = x + o(x)$, follows.

(ii) † Prove that the prime number theorem implies that this limit holds.

(iii) Using exercise zeta 1.1.2, prove that $-(\zeta'/\zeta)(s) - \zeta(s)$ has a Taylor expansion $-2\gamma + c_1'(s-1) + \ldots$ around $s = 1$.

(iv) Explain why we cannot then deduce that

$$\lim_{N\to\infty} \sum_{n\leq N} \frac{\Lambda(n) - 1}{n} = \lim_{s\to 1^+} \sum_{n\geq 1} \frac{\Lambda(n) - 1}{n^s}, \text{ which exists and equals } -2\gamma.$$

exmertens

EXERCISE 1.1.10. *

(i) Use (Pavg 1.1.10) and partial summation show that there is a constant c such that

$$\sum_{p\leq x} \frac{1}{p} = \log\log x + c + O\left(\frac{1}{\log x}\right).$$

(ii) Deduce *Mertens' Theorem*, that there exists a constant γ such that

$$\prod_{p\leq x} \left(1 - \frac{1}{p}\right) \sim \frac{e^{-\gamma}}{\log x}.$$

In the two preceding exercises the constant γ is in fact the Euler-Mascheroni constant, but this is not so straightforward to establish. The next exercise gives one way of obtaining information about the constant in Exercise exmertens 1.1.10.

exmertens2

EXERCISE 1.1.11. † In this exercise, put $\sigma = 1 + 1/\log x$.

(i) Show that

$$\sum_{p>x} \log\left(1 - \frac{1}{p^\sigma}\right)^{-1} = \sum_{p>x} \frac{1}{p^\sigma} + O\Big(\frac{1}{x}\Big) = \int_1^\infty \frac{e^{-t}}{t} dt + O\Big(\frac{1}{\log x}\Big).$$

(ii) Show that

$$\sum_{p\le x}\left(\log\Big(1-\frac{1}{p^\sigma}\Big)^{-1}-\log\Big(1-\frac{1}{p}\Big)^{-1}\right)=-\int_0^1\frac{1-e^{-t}}{t}dt+O\Big(\frac{1}{\log x}\Big).$$

(iii) Conclude, using exercise 1.1.2, that the constant γ in exercise 1.1.10(ii) equals

$$\int_0^1\frac{1-e^{-t}}{t}dt-\int_1^\infty\frac{e^{-t}}{t}dt.$$

That this equals the Euler-Mascheroni constant is established in [?].

ex2.7

Exercise 1.1.12. * Uniformly for η in the range $\frac{1}{\log y}\ll\eta<1$, show that

$$\sum_{p\le y}\frac{\log p}{p^{1-\eta}}\ll\frac{y^\eta}{\eta}\ ;$$

and

$$\sum_{p\le y}\frac{1}{p^{1-\eta}}\le\log(1/\eta)+O\Big(\frac{y^\eta}{\log(y^\eta)}\Big).$$

Hint: Split the sum into those primes with $p^\eta\ll 1$, and those with $p^\eta\gg 1$.

Exercise 1.1.13. * If f and g are functions from $\mathbb{N}$ to $\mathbb{C}$, show that the relation $f=1*g$ is equivalent to the relation $g=\mu*f$. (Given two proofs.) This is known as *Möbius inversion*.

k-div

Exercise 1.1.14. (i) Given a natural number k, use the hyperbola method together with induction and partial summation to show that

$$\sum_{n\le x}d_k(n)=xP_k(\log x)+O(x^{1-1/k+\epsilon})$$

where $P_k(t)$ denotes a polynomial of degree $k-1$ with leading term $t^{k-1}/(k-1)!$.
(ii) Deduce, using partial summation, that if $R_k(t)+R_k'(t)=P_k(t)$ then

$$\sum_{n\le x}d_k(n)\log(x/n)=xR_k(\log x)+O(x^{1-1/k+\epsilon}).$$

(iii) Deduce, using partial summation, that if $Q_k(u)=P_k(u)+\int_{t=0}^u P_k(t)dt$ then

$$\sum_{n\le x}\frac{d_k(n)}{n}=Q_k(\log x)+O(1).$$

Analogies of these estimates hold for any real $k>0$, in which case $(k-1)!$ is replaced by $\Gamma(k)$.

ex:MobiusEquiv

Exercise 1.1.15. Modify the above proof to show that

(i) If $M(x)\ll x/(\log x)^A$ then $\psi(x)-x\ll x(\log\log x)^2/(\log x)^A$.
(ii) Conversely, if $\psi(x)-x\ll x/(\log x)^A$ then $M(x)\ll x/(\log x)^{\min(1,A)}$.

MobPNT

Exercise 1.1.16. (i) * Show that

$$M(x)\log x=-\sum_{p\le x}\log p\ M(x/p)+O(x).$$

(ii) Deduce that

$$\liminf_{x\to\infty} \frac{M(x)}{x} + \limsup_{x\to\infty} \frac{M(x)}{x} = 0.$$

(iii) Use Selberg's formula to prove that

$$(\psi(x) - x)\log x = -\sum_{p\le x} \log p \left(\psi\left(\frac{x}{p}\right) - \frac{x}{p}\right) + O(x).$$

(iv) Deduce that

$$\liminf_{x\to\infty} \frac{\psi(x) - x}{x} \quad + \quad \limsup_{x\to\infty} \frac{\psi(x) - x}{x} \;=\; 0.$$

Compare!

CHAPTER 1.2

First results on multiplicative functions

We have just seen that understanding the mean value of the Möbius function leads to the prime number theorem. Motivated by this, we now begin a more general study of mean values of multiplicative functions.

1.2.1. A heuristic

In Section 1.1.4 we saw that one can estimate the mean value of the k-divisor function by writing d_k as the convolution $1 * d_{k-1}$. Given a multiplicative function f, let us write f as $1 * g$ so that g is also multiplicative. Then

$$\sum_{n\le x} f(n) = \sum_{n\le x}\sum_{d|n} g(d) = \sum_{d\le x} g(d)\Big[\frac{x}{d}\Big].$$

Since $[z] = z + O(1)$ we have

$$\sum_{n\le x} f(n) = x\sum_{d\le x}\frac{g(d)}{d} + O\Big(\sum_{d\le x}|g(d)|\Big). \tag{1.2.1}$$

In several situations, for example in the case of the k-divisor function treated earlier, the remainder term in (1.2.1) may be shown to be small. Omitting this term, and approximating $\sum_{d\le x} g(d)/d$ by $\prod_{p\le x}(1 + g(p)/p + g(p^2)/p^2 + \ldots)$ we arrive at the following heuristic:

$$\sum_{n\le x} f(n) \approx x\ \mathcal{P}(f;x) \tag{1.2.2}$$

where "$\approx$" is interpreted as "is roughly equal to", and

(1.2.3)
$$\mathcal{P}(f;x) = \prod_{p\le x}\Big(1 + \frac{g(p)}{p} + \frac{g(p^2)}{p^2} + \ldots\Big) = \prod_{p\le x}\Big(1-\frac{1}{p}\Big)\Big(1 + \frac{f(p)}{p} + \frac{f(p^2)}{p^2} + \ldots\Big).$$

In the special case that $0 \le f(p) \le f(p^2) \le \ldots$ for all primes p (so that $g(d)\ge 0$ for all d), one easily gets an upper bound of the correct order of magnitude: If $f = 1 * g$ then $g(d) \ge 0$ for all $d \ge 1$ by assumption, and so

$$\sum_{n\le x} f(n) = \sum_{d\le x} g(d)\Big[\frac{x}{d}\Big] \le \sum_{d\le x} g(d)\frac{x}{d} \le x\ \mathcal{P}(f;x)$$

(as in (1.2.3)).

In the case of the k-divisor function, the heuristic (1.2.2) predicts that

$$\sum_{n\le x} d_k(n) \approx x\prod_{p\le x}\Big(1-\frac{1}{p}\Big)^{-(k-1)} \sim x(e^\gamma \log x)^{k-1},$$

which is off from the correct asymptotic formula, $\sim x(\log x)^{k-1}/(k-1)!$, by only a constant factor (see exercise 1.1.14(i)). Moreover $d_k(p^j) \geq d_k(p^{j-1})$ for all p^j so this yields an (unconditional) upper bound.

One of our aims will be to obtain results that are uniform over the class of all mutiplicative functions. Thus for example we could consider x to be large and consider the multiplicative function f with $f(p^k) = 0$ for $p \leq \sqrt{x}$ and $f(p^k) = 1$ for $p > \sqrt{x}$. In this case, we have $f(n) = 1$ if n is a prime between $\sqrt{x}$ and x and $f(n) = 0$ for other $n \leq x$. Thus, the heuristic suggests that

$$\pi(x) - \pi(\sqrt{x}) + 1 = \sum_{n \leq x} f(n) \approx x \prod_{p \leq \sqrt{x}} \Big(1 - \frac{1}{p}\Big) \sim x \frac{e^{-\gamma}}{\log \sqrt{x}} \sim \frac{2e^{-\gamma} x}{\log x}.$$

Comparing this to the prime number theorem, the heuristic is off by a constant factor again, this time $2e^{-\gamma} \approx 1.1...$.

This heuristic suggests that the sum of the Möbius function,

$$M(x) = \sum_{n \leq x} \mu(n) \qquad \text{is comparable with} \qquad x \prod_{p \leq x} \Big(1 - \frac{1}{p}\Big)^2 \sim \frac{x e^{-2\gamma}}{(\log x)^2}.$$

However $M(x)$ is known to be much smaller. The best bound that we know unconditionally is that $M(x) \ll x \exp(-c(\log x)^{\frac{3}{5}-\epsilon})$ (see chapter **??**), and we expect $M(x)$ to be as small as $x^{\frac{1}{2}+\epsilon}$ (as this is equivalent to the unproved *Riemann Hypothesis*). In any event, the heuristic certainly suggests that $M(x) = o(x)$, which is equivalent to the prime number theorem, as we saw in Theorem 1.1.1.

S2.2

1.2.2. Multiplicative functions and Dirichlet series

Given a multiplicative function $f(n)$ we define $F(s) := \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{f(n)}{n^s}$ as usual, and now define the coefficients $\Lambda_f(n)$ by

$$-\frac{F'(s)}{F(s)} = \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{\Lambda_f(n)}{n^s}.$$

Comparing the coefficient of $1/n^s$ in $-F'(s) = F(s) \cdot (-F'(s)/F(s))$ we have

ConvolEqNew (1.2.4)
$$f(n) \log n = \sum_{d|n} \Lambda_f(d) f(n/d).$$

LambdaF EXERCISE 1.2.1. Let f be a multiplicative function. and fix $\kappa > 0$

(i) Show that $\Lambda_f(n) = 0$ unless n is a prime power.
(ii) Show that if f is totally multiplicative then $\Lambda_f(n) = f(n)\Lambda(n)$.
(iii) Show that $\Lambda_f(p) = f(p) \log p$, $\Lambda_f(p^2) = (2f(p^2) - f(p)^2) \log p$, and that every $\Lambda_f(p^k)$ equals $\log p$ times some polynomial in $f(p), f(p^2), \ldots, f(p^k)$.
(iv) Show that if $|\Lambda_f(n)| \leq \kappa \Lambda(n)$ for all n, then $|f(n)| \leq d_\kappa(n)$.

We will work mostly under the hypothesis $|\Lambda_f(n)| \leq \kappa\Lambda(n)$ for all n, which has several advantages. The most important is that we avoid examples in which mean values are very small for reasons concerning just one prime. For example, the multiplicative function $(-1)^{n-1}$, for which $f(p^k) = 1$ for all odd primes p and $f(2^k) = -1$, has sum up to x equal to either 1 or 0, and $\sum_{n \leq N} f(n)f(n+1) = -N$, yet, other than at the prime 2, it is the same as the multiplicative function 1, which has large mean value. Many of our results can be extended to a much wider selection of multiplicative functions, via convolutions.

ex2.1 EXERCISE 1.2.2. Suppose that f is a non-negative arithmetic function, and that $F(\sigma) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} f(n)n^{-\sigma}$ is convergent for some $\sigma > 0$.

(i) Prove that $\sum_{n\le x} f(n) \le x^{\sigma} F(\sigma)$.

(ii) Moreover show that if $0 < \sigma < 1$ then

$$\sum_{n\le x} f(n) + x\sum_{n>x} \frac{f(n)}{n} \le x^{\sigma} F(\sigma).$$

This technique is known as *Rankin's trick*, and is surprisingly effective. The values $f(p^k)$ for $p^k > x$ appear in the Euler product for $F(\sigma)$ and yet are irrelevant to the mean value of $f(n)$ for n up to x. However, for a given x, we can take $f(p^k) = 0$ for every $p^k > x$, to minimize the value of $F(\sigma)$ above.

1.2.3. Multiplicative functions close to 1

S2.2

The heuristic (1.2.2) is accurate and easy to justify when the function g is small in size, or in other words, when f is close to 1. We give a sample such result which will lead to several applications.

pr2.1 PROPOSITION 1.2.1. *Let $f = 1 * g$ be a multiplicative function. If*

$$\sum_{d=1}^{\infty} \frac{|g(d)|}{d^{\sigma}} = \widetilde{G}(\sigma)$$

is convergent for some σ, $0 \le \sigma \le 1$, then

$$\Big|\sum_{n\le x} f(n) - x\mathcal{P}(f)\Big| \le x^{\sigma}\widetilde{G}(\sigma),$$

where $\mathcal{P}(f) := \mathcal{P}(f;\infty)$, and

$$\lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{1}{x}\sum_{n\le x} f(n) = \mathcal{P}(f).$$

If $\widetilde{G}(\sigma)$ converges then $\widetilde{G}(1)$ does. If each $|f(n)| \le 1$ then $\widetilde{G}(1)$ converges if and only if $\sum_p \frac{|1-f(p)|}{p} < \infty$.

PROOF. The argument giving (1.2.1) yields that

$$\Big|\sum_{n\le x} f(n) - x\sum_{d\le x}\frac{g(d)}{d}\Big| \le \sum_{d\le x} |g(d)|.$$

Since $\mathcal{P}(f) = \sum_{d\ge 1} g(d)/d$ we have that

$$\Big|\sum_{d\le x}\frac{g(d)}{d} - \mathcal{P}(f)\Big| \le \sum_{d>x}\frac{|g(d)|}{d}.$$

Combining these two inequalities yields

SweetBound

$$\Big|\sum_{n\le x} f(n) - x\mathcal{P}(f)\Big| \le \sum_{d\le x}|g(d)| + x\sum_{d>x}\frac{|g(d)|}{d}. \tag{1.2.5}$$

We now use Rankin's trick: we multiply the terms in the first sum by $(x/d)^{\sigma} \ge 1$, and in the second sum by $(d/x)^{1-\sigma} > 1$, so that the right hand side of (1.2.5) is

$$\le \sum_{d\le x}|g(d)|\left(\frac{x}{d}\right)^{\sigma} + x\sum_{d>x}\frac{|g(d)|}{d}\left(\frac{d}{x}\right)^{1-\sigma} = x^{\sigma}\widetilde{G}(\sigma),$$

the first result in the lemma. This immediately implies the second result for $0 \leq \sigma < 1$.

One can rewrite the right hand side of (SweetBound 1.2.5) as

$$\int_0^x \sum_{n>t} \frac{|g(n)|}{n} dt = o_{x\to\infty}(x),$$

because $\sum_{n>t} |g(n)|/n$ is bounded, and tends to zero as $t \to \infty$. This implies the second result for $\sigma = 1$. $\square$

sec:Non-neg

1.2.4. Non-negative multiplicative functions

Let us now consider our heuristic for the special case of non-negative multiplicative functions with suitable growth conditions. Here we shall see that right side of our heuristic (E2.2 1.2.2) is at least a good upper bound for $\sum_{n\leq x} f(n)$.

Prop2.1 PROPOSITION 1.2.2. *Let f be a non-negative multiplicative function, and suppose there are constants A and B for which*

eq:sumps (1.2.6)
$$\sum_{m\leq z} \Lambda_f(m) \leq Az + B,$$

for all $z \geq 1$. Then for $x \geq e^{2B}$ we have

$$\sum_{n\leq x} f(n) \leq \frac{(A+1)x}{\log x + 1 - B} \sum_{n\leq x} \frac{f(n)}{n}$$

PROOF. We begin with the decomposition

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{n\leq x} f(n)\log x &= \sum_{n\leq x} f(n)\log n + \sum_{n\leq x} f(n)\log(x/n)\\ &\leq \sum_{n\leq x} f(n)\log n + \sum_{n\leq x} f(n)\Big(\frac{x}{n}-1\Big),\end{aligned}$$

which holds since $0 \leq \log t \leq t-1$ for all $t \geq 1$. For the first term we have

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{n\leq x} f(n)\log n = \sum_{n\leq x}\sum_{n=mr} f(r)\Lambda_f(m) &\leq \sum_{r\leq x} f(r) \sum_{m\leq x/r} \Lambda_f(m)\\ &\leq \sum_{r\leq x} f(r)\Big(\frac{Ax}{r} + B\Big).\end{aligned}$$

The result follows by combining these two inequalities. $\square$

Proposition Prop2.1 1.2.2 establishes the heuristic (E2.3 1.2.3) for many common multiplicative functions:

cor2.3 COROLLARY 1.2.3. *Let f be a non-negative multiplicative function for which either $0 \leq f(n) \leq 1$ for all n, or $|\Lambda_f(n)| \leq \kappa\Lambda(n)$ for all n, for some given constant $\kappa > 1$. Then*

E2.5 (1.2.7)
$$\frac{1}{x}\sum_{n\leq x} f(n) \ll_{A,B} \mathcal{P}(f;x) \ll \exp\Big(-\sum_{p\leq x}\frac{1-f(p)}{p}\Big).$$

Moreover if $0 \leq f(n) \leq 1$ for all n then

$$\lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{1}{x}\sum_{n\leq x} f(n) = \mathcal{P}(f).$$

PROOF. The hypothesis implies that (1.2.6) holds: If $|f(n)| \le 1$ then this follows by exercise 1.2.5(iii). If each $|\Lambda_f(n)| \le \kappa\Lambda(n)$ then the Chebyshev estimates give that

$$\sum_{n \le z} |\Lambda_f(n)| \le \kappa \sum_{n\le z} \Lambda(n) \le Az + B,$$

any constant $A > \kappa \log 4$ being permissible.

So we apply Proposition 1.2.2, and bound the right-hand side using Mertens' Theorem, and

$$\sum_{n\le x} \frac{f(n)}{n} \le \prod_{p\le x} \Big(1 + \frac{f(p)}{p} + \frac{f(p^2)}{p^2} + \dots\Big),$$

to obtain the first inequality. The second inequality then follows from exercise 1.2.7 with $\epsilon = \frac{1}{2}$.

If $\sum_p (1 - f(p))/p$ diverges, then (1.2.7) shows that

$$\lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{1}{x} \sum_{n\le x} f(n) = 0 = \mathcal{P}(f).$$

Suppose now that $\sum_p (1 - f(p))/p$ converges. If we write $f = 1 * g$ then this condition assures us that $\sum_{p^k} |g(p^k)|/p^k$ converges, which in turn is equivalent to the convergence of $\sum_n |g(n)|/n$ by exercise 1.2.8. The second statement in Proposition 1.2.1 now finishes our proof. $\square$

In the coming chapters we will establish appropriate generalizations of Corollary 1.2.3. For example, for real-valued multiplicative functions with $-1 \le f(n) \le 1$, Wirsing proved that $\sum_{n\le x} f(n) \sim \mathcal{P}(f)x$. This implies that $\sum_{n\le x} \mu(n) = o(x)$ and hence the prime number theorem, by Theorem 1.1.1. We will go on to study Halász's seminal result on the mean values of complex-valued multiplicative functions which take values in the unit disc.

Proposition 1.2.2 also enables us to prove a preliminary result indicating that mean values of multiplicative functions vary slowly. The result given here is only useful when f is "close" to 1, but we shall see a more general such result in Chapter ??.

PROPOSITION 1.2.4. *Let f be a multiplicative function with $|f(n)| \le 1$ for all n. Then for all $1 \le y \le \sqrt{x}$ we have*

$$\Big|\frac{1}{x}\sum_{n\le x} f(n) - \frac{y}{x}\sum_{n\le x/y} f(n)\Big| \ll \frac{\log(ey)}{\log x} \exp\Big(\sum_{p\le x} \frac{|1-f(p)|}{p}\Big).$$

PROOF. Write $f = 1 * g$, so that g is a multiplicative function with each $g(p) = f(p) - 1$, and each $\Lambda_g(p) = \Lambda_f(p) - \Lambda(p)$ (so that (1.2.6) holds by exercise 1.2.5(iii)). Recall that

$$\Big|\frac{1}{x}\sum_{n\le x} f(n) - \sum_{d\le x}\frac{g(d)}{d}\Big| \le \frac{1}{x}\sum_{d\le x} |g(d)|,$$

so that

$$\Big|\frac{1}{x}\sum_{n\le x} f(n) - \frac{y}{x}\sum_{n\le x/y} f(n)\Big| \ll \frac{1}{x}\sum_{d\le x}|g(d)| + \frac{y}{x}\sum_{d\le x/y}|g(d)| + \sum_{x/y<d\le x}\frac{|g(d)|}{d}. \tag{1.2.8}$$

Appealing to Proposition 1.2.2 we find that for any $z \geq 3$

$$\sum_{n\leq z} |g(n)| \ll \frac{z}{\log z} \sum_{n\leq z} \frac{|g(n)|}{n} \ll \frac{z}{\log z} \exp\Big(\sum_{p\leq z} \frac{|1-f(p)|}{p} \Big).$$

From this estimate and partial summation we find that the right hand side of (1.2.8) is

$$\ll \frac{\log(ey)}{\log x} \exp\Big(\sum_{p\leq x} \frac{|1-f(p)|}{p} \Big),$$

proving our Proposition. $\square$

1.2.5. Logarithmic means

In addition to the natural mean values $\frac{1}{x}\sum_{n\leq x} f(n)$, we have already encountered logarithmic means $\frac{1}{\log x}\sum_{n\leq x} f(n)/n$ several times in our work above. We now prove the analogy to Proposition 1.2.1 for logarithmic means:

NasProp

Proposition 1.2.5 (Naslund). *Let $f = 1 * g$ be a multiplicative function and $\sum_d |g(d)| d^{-\sigma} = \widetilde{G}(\sigma) < \infty$ for some $\sigma \in [0,1)$. Then*

$$\left| \sum_{n\leq x} \frac{f(n)}{n} - \mathcal{P}(f) \left(\log x + \gamma - \sum_{n\geq 1} \frac{\Lambda_f(n) - \Lambda(n)}{n} \right) \right| \leq \frac{x^{\sigma-1}}{1-\sigma}\ \widetilde{G}(\sigma).$$

Proof. We start with

$$\sum_{n\leq x} \frac{f(n)}{n} = \sum_{n\leq x} \frac{1}{n} \sum_{d|n} g(d) = \sum_{d\leq x} \frac{g(d)}{d} \sum_{m\leq x/d} \frac{1}{m}$$

and then, using exercise 1.1.4, we deduce that

$$\left| \sum_{n\leq x} \frac{f(n)}{n} - \sum_{d\leq x} \frac{g(d)}{d} \Big(\log \frac{x}{d} + \gamma \Big) \right| \leq \sum_{d\leq x} \frac{|g(d)|}{d} \cdot \frac{d}{x} = \frac{1}{x} \sum_{d\leq x} |g(d)|.$$

Since $g(n)\log n$ is the coefficient of $1/n^s$ in $-G'(s) = G(s)(-G'/G)(s)$, thus $g(n)\log n = (g * \Lambda_g)(n)$, and we note that $\Lambda_f = \Lambda + \Lambda_g$. Hence

$$\sum_{n\geq 1} \frac{g(n)\log n}{n} = \sum_{a,b\geq 1} \frac{g(a)\Lambda_g(b)}{ab} = \mathcal{P}(f) \sum_{m\geq 1} \frac{\Lambda_f(m) - \Lambda(m)}{m}.$$

Therefore $\sum_{d\geq 1} \frac{g(d)}{d}\Big(\log\frac{x}{d} + \gamma\Big) = \mathcal{P}(f)\Big(\log x + \gamma - \sum_{n\geq 1} \frac{\Lambda_f(n)-\Lambda(n)}{n}\Big)$, and so the error term in our main result is

$$\leq \frac{1}{x} \sum_{d\leq x} |g(d)| + \sum_{d>x} \frac{|g(d)|}{d} \Big| \log \frac{x}{d} + \gamma \Big|.$$

Since $1/(1-\sigma) \geq 1$ we can use the inequalities $1 \leq (x/d)^\sigma \leq (x/d)^\sigma/(1-\sigma)$ for $d \leq x$, and

$$|\log(x/d) + \gamma| \leq 1 + \log(d/x) \leq \frac{(d/x)^{1-\sigma}}{1-\sigma}$$

for $d > x$, to get a bound on the error term of $\frac{x^{\sigma-1}}{1-\sigma}\ \widetilde{G}(\sigma)$ as claimed. $\square$

GOUB PROPOSITION 1.2.6. *If f is a multiplicative function with $|f(n)| \le 1$ for all n, then*
$$\frac{1}{\log x}\Big|\sum_{n\le x}\frac{f(n)}{n}\Big| \ll \exp\Big(-\frac{1}{2}\sum_{p\le x}\frac{1-\mathrm{Re}(f(p))}{p}\Big).$$

PROOF. Let $h = 1 * f$, so that
$$\sum_{n\le x} h(n) = \sum_{n\le x}\sum_{d|n} f(d) = \sum_{d\le x} f(d)\Big(\frac{x}{d}+O(1)\Big) = x\sum_{d\le x}\frac{f(d)}{d}+O(x).$$
We deduce, applying Proposition 1.2.2 (since (1.2.6) is satisfied as $\Lambda_h = \Lambda + \Lambda_f$, and then by exercise 1.2.5(iii)), that
$$\begin{aligned}\frac{1}{\log x}\Big|\sum_{n\le x}\frac{f(n)}{n}\Big| &\le \frac{1}{x\log x}\sum_{n\le x}|h(n)| + O\Big(\frac{1}{\log x}\Big)\\ &\ll \frac{1}{\log^2 x}\sum_{n\le x}\frac{|h(n)|}{n}+\frac{1}{\log x}\\ &\ll \exp\left(\sum_{p\le x}\frac{|1+f(p)|-2}{p}\right)+\frac{1}{\log x}\end{aligned}$$
using Mertens' theorem. Now $\frac{1}{2}(1-\mathrm{Re}(z)) \le 2-|1+z| \le 1-\mathrm{Re}(z)$ whenever $|z|\le 1$, and so the result follows. $\square$

We expect that, for non-negative real multiplicative functions f, the quantity
$$\mathcal{R}(f;x) := \sum_{n\le x}\frac{f(n)}{n}\Big/\prod_{p\le x}\Big(1+\frac{f(p)}{p}+\frac{f(p^2)}{p^2}+\dots\Big),$$
should typically be bounded, based on the heuristic discussion above. For example $\mathcal{R}(d_\kappa;x) \sim (e^{-\gamma})^\kappa/|\Gamma(\kappa+1)|$ by exercise 1.1.14(iii) and Mertens' Theorem.

SumCompare EXERCISE 1.2.3. Suppose that f and g are real multiplicative functions with $f(n), g(n) \ge 0$ for all $n \ge 1$.

(i) Prove that $0 \le \mathcal{R}(f;x) \le 1$.
(ii) Prove that $\mathcal{R}(f;x) \ge \mathcal{R}(f;x)\cdot\mathcal{R}(g;x) \ge \mathcal{R}(f*g;x)$.
(iii) Deduce that if f is totally multiplicative and $0 \le f(n) \le 1$ for all $n \ge 1$ then $1 \ge \mathcal{R}(f;x) \ge \mathcal{R}(1;x) \sim e^{-\gamma}$.
(iv) Suppose that f is *supported* only on squarefree integers (that is, $f(n) = 0$ if $p^2|n$ for some prime p). Let g be the totally multiplicative function with $g(p) = f(p)$ for each prime p. Prove that $\mathcal{R}(f;x) \ge \mathcal{R}(g;x)$.

1.2.6. Exercises

EXERCISE 1.2.4. * Prove that if $f(.)$ is multiplicative with $-1 \le f(p^k) \le 1$ for each prime power p^k then $\lim_{x\to\infty}\mathcal{P}(f;x)$ exists and equals $\mathcal{P}(f)$

ex:WhichHypo EXERCISE 1.2.5. (i) Show that if $|f(n)| \le 1$ for all n then there exist constants A, C for which $\sum_{m\le z}|\Lambda_f(m)| \le Az + C$, for all $z \ge 1$.
(ii) Prove that if $|f(p^k)| \le B^k$ for all prime powers p^k then $|\Lambda_f(p^k)| \le (2^k-1)B^k\log p$ for all prime powers p^k.
(iii) Show this is best possible (Hint: Try $f(p^k) = -(-B)^k$).

(iv) Show that if $f(2^k) = -1$ for all $k \geq 1$ then $F(1) = 0$ and

$$\sum_{2^k \leq x} \Lambda_f(2^k) \leq -(x \log 2 - \log x - 1).$$

(v) Give an example of an f where $B > 1$, for which $\sum_{n \leq x} |\Lambda_f(n)| \gg x^{1+\delta_B}$. This explains why, when we consider f with values outside the unit circle, we prefer working with the hypothesis $|\Lambda_f(n)| \leq \kappa\Lambda(n)$ rather than $|f(p^k)| \leq B$.

ex:OleksiyRestrict

Exercise 1.2.6. Suppose that each $|f(n)| = -1, 0$ or 1, and each $|\Lambda_f(n)| \leq \kappa\Lambda(n)$. Prove that, for each prime p, either $f(p^k) = f(p)^k$ for each $k \geq 2$, or $f(p^k) = 0$ for each $k \geq 2$.

SizeP(f,x)

Exercise 1.2.7. (i) Let f be a real-valued multiplicative function for which there exist constants $\kappa \geq 1$ and $\epsilon > 0$, such that $|f(p^k)| \leq d_\kappa(p^k)(p^k)^{\frac{1}{2}-\epsilon}$ for every prime power p^k. Prove that

$$\mathcal{P}(f; x) \ll_{\kappa,\epsilon} \exp\Big(-\sum_{p \leq x} \frac{1 - f(p)}{p} \Big).$$

This should be interpreted as telling us that, in the situations which we are interested in, the values of $f(p^k)$ with $k > 1$ have little effect on the value of $\mathcal{P}(f; x)$.
(ii) Show that if, in addition, there exists a constant $\delta > 0$ for which

$$\Big| 1 + \frac{f(p)}{p} + \frac{f(p^2)}{p^2} + \dots \Big| \geq \delta$$

for every prime p then

$$\mathcal{P}(f; x) \asymp_{\kappa,\delta,\epsilon} \exp\Big(-\sum_{p \leq x} \frac{1 - f(p)}{p} \Big).$$

(iii)* Prove that if $|\Lambda_f(n)| \leq \Lambda(n)$ for all n then the above hypotheses hold with $\kappa = 1$, $\epsilon = \frac{1}{2}$ and $\delta = \frac{1}{4}$.

ex2.0

Exercise 1.2.8. * Show that if $g(.)$ is multiplicative then $\sum_{n \geq 1} |g(n)|/n^\sigma < \infty$ if and only if $\sum_{p^k} |g(p^k)|/p^{k\sigma} < \infty$.

ex:Prop2.1

Exercise 1.2.9. * Deduce, from Proposition pr2.1 1.2.1 and the previous exercise, that if $\sum_{p^k} |f(p^k) - f(p^{k-1})|/p^k < \infty$ then $\sum_{n \leq x} f(n) \sim x\mathcal{P}(f)$ as $x \to \infty$.

ex2.2

Exercise 1.2.10. * For any natural number q, prove that for any $\sigma \geq 0$ we have

$$\Big| \sum_{\substack{n \leq x \\ (n,q)=1}} 1 - \frac{\phi(q)}{q} x \Big| \leq x^\sigma \prod_{p|q} \Big(1 + \frac{1}{p^\sigma} \Big).$$

Taking $\sigma = 0$, we obtain the sieve of Eratosthenes bound of $2^{\omega(q)}$.[1]

(i) Prove that the bound is optimized by the solution to $\sum_{p|q} (\log p)/(p^\sigma + 1) = \log x$, if that solution is ≥ 0.
(ii) Explain why the bound is of interest only if $0 \leq \sigma < 1$.

[1]Where $\omega(q)$ denotes the number of distinct primes dividing q.

(iii) Suppose that the prime factors of q are all $\leq y = x^{1/u}$. Selecting $\sigma = 1 - \frac{\log(u \log u)}{\log y}$, determine when this method allows us to give an asymptotic estimate for the number of integers up to x, that are coprime with q. (Hint: Use exercise 1.1.12.)

ex:near1

EXERCISE 1.2.11. Suppose that f is a multiplicative function "close to 1", that is $|f(p^k) - f(p^{k-1})| \leq \frac{1}{2p^k}\binom{k+r}{r}$ for all prime powers p^k, for some integer $r \geq 0$. Prove that

$$\sum_{n \leq x} f(n) = x\mathcal{P}(f) + O((\log x)^{r+1}).$$

(Hint: Use Proposition 1.2.1 with $\sigma = 0$, the Taylor expansion for $(1-t)^{-r-1}$ and Mertens' Theorem.)

ex2.3

EXERCISE 1.2.12. * Let $\sigma(n) = \sum_{d|n} d$. Prove that

$$\sum_{n \leq x} \frac{\mu(n)^2 \sigma(n)}{\phi(n)} = \frac{15}{\pi^2} x + O(\sqrt{x} \log x).$$

ex2.5

EXERCISE 1.2.13. † Let f be multiplicative and write $f = d_k * g$ where $k \in \mathbb{N}$ and d_k deontes the k-divisor function. Assuming that $|g|$ is small, as in Proposition 1.2.1, develop an asymptotic formula for $\sum_{n \leq x} f(n)$.

ex:Pr2.1RightConstant

EXERCISE 1.2.14. Fix $\kappa > 0$. Assume that f is a non-negative multiplicative function and that each $|\Lambda_f(n)| \leq \kappa \Lambda(n)$.

(i) In the proof of Proposition 1.2.2, modify the bound on $f(n)\log(x/n)$ using exercise 1.1.14 , to deduce that for any $A > \kappa$,

$$\sum_{n \leq x} f(n) \leq \frac{x}{\log x + O(1)} \Big(A \sum_{n \leq x} \frac{f(n)}{n} + O\Big(\frac{(\log x)^{\kappa - 1}}{\Gamma(\kappa)} \Big) \Big)$$

(ii) Deduce that $\frac{1}{x} \sum_{n \leq x} f(n) \leq \kappa(e^\gamma + o(1)) \ \mathcal{P}(f; x) + O((\log x)^{\kappa - 2})$.

The bound in (i) is essentially "best possible" since exercise 1.1.14 implies that

$$\sum_{n \leq x} d_\kappa(n) \sim \kappa \frac{x}{\log x} \sum_{n \leq x} \frac{d_\kappa(n)}{n}.$$

ex:WeightL(x/n)

EXERCISE 1.2.15. Let f be a multiplicative function with each $|f(n)| \leq 1$.

(i) Show that $\sum_{n \leq x} f(n) \log \frac{x}{n} = \int_1^x \frac{1}{t} \sum_{n \leq t} f(n) \ dt$.

(ii) Deduce, using Proposition 1.2.4, that

$$\sum_{n \leq x} f(n) \log \frac{x}{n} - \sum_{n \leq x} f(n) \ll \frac{x}{\log x} \exp\Big(\sum_{p \leq x} \frac{|1 - f(p)|}{p} \Big).$$

ex:f(n)f(n+1)

EXERCISE 1.2.16. Suppose that f and g are multiplicative functions with each $|f(n)|, |g(n)| \leq 1$. Define $\mathcal{P}_p(f) := \Big(1 - \frac{1}{p}\Big)\Big(1 + \frac{f(p)}{p} + \frac{f(p^2)}{p^2} + \ldots\Big)$, and then $\mathcal{P}_p(f,g) = \mathcal{P}_p(f) + \mathcal{P}_p(g) - 1$. Finally let $\mathcal{P}(f,g) = \prod_p \mathcal{P}_p(f,g)$. Prove that if $\sum_p \frac{|1-f(p)|}{p}$, $\sum_p \frac{|1-g(p)|}{p} < \infty$ then

$$\lim_{x \to \infty} \frac{1}{x} \sum_{n \leq x} f(n) g(n+1) = \mathcal{P}(f,g).$$

CHAPTER 1.3

Integers without large prime factors

ch:smooths

1.3.1. "Smooth" or "friable" numbers

Let $p(n)$ and $P(n)$ be the smallest and largest prime factors of n, respectively. Given a real number $y \geq 2$, the integers, n, all of whose prime factors are at most y (that is, for which $P(n) \leq y$) are called "y-smooth" or "y-friable".[1] Smooth numbers appear all over analytic number theory. For example most factoring algorithms search for smooth numbers (in an intermediate step) which appear in a certain way, since they are relatively easy to factor. Moreover all smooth numbers n may be factored as ab, where $a \in (A/y, A]$ for any given A, $1 \leq A \leq n$. This "well-factorability" is useful in attacking Waring's problem and in finding small gaps between consecutive primes (see chapter ch:MaynardTao ??). However, counting the y-smooth numbers up to x can be surprisingly tricky. Define

$$\Psi(x,y) := \sum_{\substack{n \leq x \\ P(n) \leq y}} 1.$$

We can formulate this as a question about multiplicative functions by considering the multiplicative function given by $f(p^k) = 1$ if $p \leq y$, and $f(p^k) = 0$ otherwise.

If $x \leq y$ then clearly $\Psi(x,y) = [x] = x + O(1)$. Next suppose that $y \leq x \leq y^2$. If $n \leq x$ is not y-smooth then it must be divisible by a unique prime $p \in (y, x]$. Thus, by exercise exmertens 1.1.10(i),

$$\begin{aligned}\Psi(x,y) &= [x] - \sum_{y < p \leq x} \sum_{\substack{n \leq x \\ p | n}} 1 = x + O(1) - \sum_{y < p \leq x} \Big(\frac{x}{p} + O(1) \Big) \\ &= x\Big(1 - \log \frac{\log x}{\log y}\Big) + O\Big(\frac{x}{\log y}\Big).\end{aligned}$$

This formula tempts one to write $x = y^u$, and then, for $1 \leq u \leq 2$, we obtain

$$\Psi(y^u, y) = y^u (1 - \log u) + O\Big(\frac{y^u}{\log y}\Big).$$

We can continue the process begun above, using the principle of inclusion and exclusion to evaluate $\Psi(y^u, y)$ by subtracting from $[y^u]$ the number of integers which are divisible by a prime larger than y, adding back the contribution from integers divisible by two primes larger than y, and so on.[2] The estimate for $\Psi(y^u, y)$ involves the Dickman-de Bruijn function $\rho(u)$ defined as follows:

---

[1] "Friable" is French (and also appears in the O.E.D.) for "crumbly". Its usage, in this context, is spreading, because the word "smooth" is already overused in mathematics.

[2] A result of this type for small values of u may be found in Ramanujan's unpublished manuscripts (collected in *The last notebook*), but the first published uniform results on this problem are due to Dickman and de Bruijn.

For $0 \le u \le 1$ let $\rho(u) = 1$, and let $\rho(u) = 1 - \log u$ for $1 \le u \le 2$. For $u > 1$ we define ρ by means of the differential-difference equation

$$u\rho'(u) = -\rho(u-1);$$

indeed there is a unique continuous solution given by the (equivalent) integral (delay) equation

$$u\rho(u) = \int_{u-1}^{u} \rho(t)dt.$$

The integral equation implies (by induction) that $\rho(u) > 0$ for all $u \ge 0$, and then the differential equation implies that $\rho'(u) < 0$ for all $u \ge 1$, so that $\rho(u)$ is decreasing in this range. The integral equation implies that $u\rho(u) \le \rho(u-1)$, and iterating this we find that $\rho(u) \le 1/[u]!$.

smooth THEOREM 1.3.1. *Uniformly for all $u \ge 1$ we have*

$$\Psi(y^u, y) = \rho(u)y^u + O\Big(\frac{y^u}{\log y} + 1\Big).$$

In other words, if we fix $u > 1$ then the proportion of the integers $\le x$ that have all of their prime factors $\le x^{1/u}$, tends to $\rho(u)$, as $x \to \infty$.

PROOF. Let $x = y^u$, and we start with

$$\Psi(x,y)\log x = \sum_{\substack{n\le x\\ P(n)\le y}} \log n + O\Big(\sum_{n\le x}\log(x/n)\Big) = \sum_{\substack{n\le x\\ P(n)\le y}} \log n + O(x).$$

Using $\log n = \sum_{d|n} \Lambda(d)$ we have

$$\sum_{\substack{n\le x\\ P(n)\le y}} \log n = \sum_{\substack{d\le x\\ P(d)\le y}} \Lambda(d)\Psi(x/d,y) = \sum_{p\le y} (\log p)\Psi(x/p,y) + O(x),$$

since the contribution of prime powers p^k (with $k \ge 2$) is easily seen to be $O(x)$. Thus

E2.10 (1.3.1) $$\Psi(x,y)\log x = \sum_{p\le y} \log p\ \Psi\Big(\frac{x}{p}, y\Big) + O(x).$$

(Compare this to the formulae in Exercise 1.1.16.)

Now we show that a similar equation is satisfied by what we think approximates $\Psi(x,y)$, namely $x\rho(u)$. Put $E(t) = \sum_{p\le t} \frac{\log p}{p} - \log t$ so that $E(t) = O(1)$ by (1.1.10). Now

$$\sum_{p\le y} \frac{\log p}{p}\rho\Big(\frac{\log(x/p)}{\log y}\Big) = \int_1^y \rho\Big(u - \frac{\log t}{\log y}\Big)d(\log t + E(t)),$$

and making a change of variables $t = y^\nu$ we find that

$$\int_1^y \rho\Big(u - \frac{\log t}{\log y}\Big)d(\log t) = (\log y)\int_0^1 \rho(u-\nu)d\nu = (\log x)\rho(u).$$

Moreover, since $E(t) \ll 1$ and ρ is monotone decreasing, integration by parts gives

$$\int_1^y \rho\Big(u - \frac{\log t}{\log y}\Big)d(E(t)) \ll \rho(u-1) + \int_1^y \Big|\frac{d}{dt}\rho\Big(u - \frac{\log t}{\log y}\Big)\Big|dt \ll \rho(u-1).$$

Thus we find that

E2.11
$$(x\rho(u))\log x = \sum_{p\le y} \log p\Big(\frac{x}{p}\rho\Big(\frac{\log(x/p)}{\log y}\Big)\Big) + O(\rho(u-1)x). \tag{1.3.2}$$

Subtracting (1.3.2) from (1.3.1) we arrive at

E2.12
$$|\Psi(x,y) - x\rho(u)|\log x \le \sum_{p\le y}\log p\Big|\Psi\Big(\frac{x}{p},y\Big) - \frac{x}{p}\rho\Big(\frac{\log x/p}{\log y}\Big)\Big| + Cx, \tag{1.3.3}$$

for a suitable constant C.

Suppose that the Theorem has been proved for $\Psi(z,y)$ for all $z \le x/2$, and we now wish to establish it for x. We may suppose that $x \ge y^2$, and our induction hypothesis is that for all $t \le x/2$ we have

$$\Big|\Psi(t,y) - t\rho\Big(\frac{\log t}{\log y}\Big)\Big| \le C_1\Big(\frac{t}{\log y}+1\Big),$$

for a suitable constant C_1. From (1.3.3) we obtain that

$$|\Psi(x,y) - x\rho(u)|\log x \le C_1\sum_{p\le y}\log p\Big(\frac{x}{p\log y}+1\Big) + Cx \le C_1x + O\Big(\frac{x}{\log y}+y\Big) + Cx.$$

Assuming, as we may, that $C_1 \ge 2C$ and that y is sufficiently large, the right hand side above is $\le 2C_1x$, and we conclude that $|\Psi(x,y) - x\rho(u)| \le C_1x/\log y$ as $u \ge 2$. This completes our proof. □

Now $\rho(u) \le 1/[u]!$ decreases very rapidly. Therefore the main term in Theorem 1.3.1 dominates the remainder term only in the narrow range when $u^u \ll \log y$. However the asymptotic $\Psi(y^u,y) \sim \rho(u)y^u$ has been established in a much wider range than in Theorem 1.3.1 by Hildebrand [?],[3] who showed that

HildPsi
$$\Psi(y^u,y) = \rho(u)y^u\left\{1 + O\left(\frac{\log(u+1)}{\log y}\right)\right\} \tag{1.3.4}$$

for $y \ge \exp((\log\log x)^2)$ where $x = y^u$. This is an extraordinarily wide range, given that Hildebrand also showed that this asymptotic holds in the only slightly larger range $y \ge (\log x)^{2+o(1)}$ if and only if the Riemann Hypothesis is true.

One can prove Theorem 1.3.1 in a number of ways. The key to the proof that we gave is the identity (1.3.1), but there are other identities that one can use. Indeed few are more elegant than de Bruijn's identity:

EDeB
$$\Psi(x,y) = [x] - \sum_{y<p\le x}\Psi\Big(\frac{x}{p},p\Big) + O(x). \tag{1.3.5}$$

However, this works out less successfully than (1.3.1), perhaps because only the X-variable in $\Psi(X,Y)$ varies in (1.3.1), whereas both variables vary in (1.3.5).

How does the result in Theorem 1.3.1 compare to the heuristic of chapter 1.2? If $f(p^k) = 1$ if prime $p \le y$ and $f(p^k) = 0$ otherwise then $\Psi(x,y) = \sum_{n\le x} f(n)$. The heuristic of chapter 1.2 then proposes the asymptotic $x\prod_{y<p\le x}(1-\frac{1}{p}) \sim x/u$ by Mertens' Theorem. This is far larger than the actual asymptotic $\sim x\rho(u)$ of Theorem 1.3.1, since $\rho(u) \le 1/[u]!$ (and a more precise estimate is given in exercise

[3] Hildebrand's proof uses a strong form of the prime number theorem, which we wish to avoid, since one of our goals is provide a different, independent proof of a strong prime number theorem.

1.3.6). Hence, removing the multiples of the small primes leaves far fewer integers than the heuristic suggests.

1.3.2. Rankin's trick and beyond, with applications

Good upper bounds may be obtained for $\Psi(x,y)$, uniformly in a wide range, by a simple application of Rankin's trick (recall Exercise 1.2.2). Below we shall write

$$\zeta(s,y)=\prod_{p\le y}\left(1-\frac{1}{p^s}\right)^{-1}=\sum_{\substack{n\ge 1\\ P(n)\le y}} n^{-s},$$

where the product and the series are both absolutely convergent in the half-plane $\mathrm{Re}(s)>0$.

ex2.6 EXERCISE 1.3.1. * (i) Show that, for any real numbers $x\ge 1$ and $y\ge 2$, the function $x^\sigma\zeta(\sigma,y)$ for $\sigma\in(0,\infty)$ attains its minimum when $\sigma=\alpha=\alpha(x,y)$ satisfying

$$\log x=\sum_{p\le y}\frac{\log p}{p^\alpha-1}.$$

(ii) Use Rankin's trick (see Exercise 1.2.2) to show that

$$\Psi(x,y)\le \sum_{\substack{n\ge 1\\ P(n)\le y}} \min\left\{1,\frac{x}{n}\right\}\le x^\alpha\zeta(\alpha,y)=\min_{\sigma>0}x^\sigma\zeta(\sigma,y).$$

(iii) Establish a wide range in which

$$\sum_{\substack{n\ge 1\\ P(n)\le y}} \min\left\{1,\frac{x}{n}\right\}\sim x\log y\cdot\int_u^\infty \rho(t)dt.$$

By a more sophisticated argument, using the saddle point method, Hildebrand and Tenenbaum [?] established an asymptotic formula for $\Psi(x,y)$ uniformly in $x\ge y\ge 2$:

HilTen (1.3.6)
$$\Psi(x,y)=\frac{x^\alpha\zeta(\alpha,y)}{\alpha\sqrt{2\pi\phi_2(\alpha,y)}}\Big(1+O\Big(\frac{1}{u}\Big)+O\Big(\frac{\log y}{y}\Big)\Big),$$

with α as in Exercise 1.3.1(i), $\phi(s,y)=\log\zeta(s,y)$ and $\phi_2(s,y)=\frac{d^2}{ds^2}\phi(s,y)$. This work implies that if $y\ge(\log x)^{1+\delta}$ then the (easy) upper bound obtained in Exercise 1.3.1(ii) is larger than $\Psi(x,y)$ by a factor of about $\sqrt{u}\log y$, that is $\Psi(x,y)\asymp x^\alpha\zeta(\alpha,y)/(\sqrt{u}\log y)$. However, in Exercise 1.3.1(ii), we saw that Rankin's method really gives an upper bound on $\min\{1,\frac{x}{n}\}$, summed over *all* y-smooth n. The result of Exercise 1.3.1(ii) then implies that the upper bound is too large by a factor of only $\asymp\sqrt{u}\log u$.

We now improve Rankin's upper bound, yielding an upper bound for $\Psi(x,y)$ which is also too large by a factor of only $\asymp\sqrt{u}\log u$.

Rankin2 PROPOSITION 1.3.2. *Let $x\ge y\ge 3$ be real numbers. There is an absolute constant C such that for any $0<\sigma\le 1$ we have*

$$\Psi(x,y)\le C\frac{y^{1-\sigma}}{\sigma\log x}x^\sigma\zeta(\sigma,y).$$

PROOF. We consider

$$\sum_{\substack{n\le x\\ P(n)\le y}} \log n = \sum_{\substack{n\le x\\ P(n)\le y}} \sum_{n=dm} \Lambda(d) = \sum_{\substack{m\le x\\ P(m)\le y}} \sum_{\substack{d\le x/m\\ P(d)\le y}} \Lambda(d).$$

The inner sum over d is

$$\sum_{p\le \min(y,x/m)} \log p \Big[\frac{\log(x/m)}{\log p}\Big] \le \sum_{p\le \min(y,x/m)} \log(x/m) = \min(\pi(y),\pi(x/m))\log(x/m),$$

and so we find that

$$\Psi(x,y)\log x = \sum_{\substack{n\le x\\ P(n)\le y}} \Big(\log n + \log(x/n)\Big) \le \sum_{\substack{n\le x\\ P(n)\le y}} \Big(\min(\pi(y),\pi(x/n))+1\Big)\log(x/n).$$

We now use the Chebyshev bound $\pi(x) \ll x/\log x$ (see (1.1.7)), together with the observation that for any $0<\sigma\le 1$ and $n\le x$ we have

$$\frac{y^{1-\sigma}(x/n)^\sigma}{\sigma} \ge \begin{cases} x/n & \text{if } x/y\le n\le x\\ y\log(x/n)/\log y & \text{if } n\le x/y.\end{cases}$$

Thus we obtain that

$$\Psi(x,y)\log x \ll \sum_{\substack{n\le x\\ P(n)\le y}} \frac{y^{1-\sigma}}{\sigma}\Big(\frac{x}{n}\Big)^\sigma \le \frac{y^{1-\sigma}}{\sigma}x^\sigma \zeta(\sigma,y),$$

as desired. □

1.3.3. Large gaps between primes

We now apply our estimates for smooth numbers to construct large gaps between primes. The gaps between primes get arbitrarily large since each of $m!+2, m!+3,\dots,m!+m$ are composite, so if p is the largest prime $\le m!+1$, and q the next prime, then $q-p\ge m$. Note that $m\sim \log p/(\log\log p)$ by Stirling's formula (Exercise 1.1.5), whereas we expect, from (1.1.1), gaps as large as $\log p$. Can such techniques establish that there are gaps between primes that are substantially larger than $\log p$ (and substantially smaller)? That is, if $p_1=2<p_2=3<\dots$ is the sequence of prime numbers then

LargePrimeGaps

$$\limsup_{n\to\infty} \frac{p_{n+1}-p_n}{\log p_n} = \infty. \tag{1.3.7}$$

In section ?? we will return to such questions and prove that

SmallPrimeGaps

$$\liminf_{n\to\infty} \frac{p_{n+1}-p_n}{\log p_n} = 0. \tag{1.3.8}$$

long gaps

THEOREM 1.3.3. *There are arbitrarily large p_n for which*

$$p_{n+1}-p_n \ge \frac12 \log p_n \frac{(\log\log p_n)\log\log\log\log p_n}{(\log\log\log p_n)^2}.$$

In particular (1.3.7) holds.

Proof. The idea is to construct a long sequence of integers, each of which is known to be composite since it divisible by a small prime. Let $m = \prod_{p \le z} p$. Our goal is to show that there exists an interval $(T, T+x]$ for which $(T+j, m) > 1$ for each $j, 1 \le j \le x$, with $T > z$ (so that every element of the interval is composite). Erdős formulated an easy way to think about this problem

The Erdős shift: There exists an integer T for which $(T+j, m) > 1$ for each $j, 1 \le j \le x$ if and only if for every prime $p|m$ there exists a residue class $a_p \pmod p$ such that for each $j, 1 \le j \le x$ there exists a prime $p|m$ for which $j \equiv a_p \pmod p$.

Proof of the Erdős shift. Given T, let each $a_p = -T$, since if $(T+j, m) > 1$ then there exists a prime $p|m$ with $p|T+j$ and so $j \equiv -T \equiv a_p \pmod p$. In the other direction select $T \equiv -a_p \pmod p$ for each $p|m$, using the Chinese Remainder Theorem, and so if $j \equiv a_p \pmod p$ then $T + j \equiv (-a_p) + a_p \equiv 0 \pmod p$ and so $p|(T+j, m)$. $\square$

The y-smooth integers up to x, can be viewed as the set of integers up to x, with the integers in the residue classes $0 \pmod p$ *sieved out*, by each prime p in the range $y < p \le x$. The proportion of the integers that are left unsieved is $\rho(u)$ (as we proved above), which is roughly $1/u^u$. This is far smaller than the proportion suggested by the usual heuristic:[4]

$$\prod_{y<p\le x}\left(1-\frac{1}{p}\right) \sim \frac{\log y}{\log x} = \frac{1}{u},$$

by Mertens' Theorem.

To construct as long an interval as possible in which every integer has a small prime factor, we need to sieve as efficiently as possible, and so we adapt the smooth numbers to our purpose. This is the key to the Erdős-Rankin construction (and indeed, it is for this purpose, that Rankin introduced his moment method). We will partition the primes up to x into three parts, those $\le y$, those in $(y, \epsilon z]$, and those in $(\epsilon z, z]$ where ϵ is a very small constant. We select y and z to be optimal in the proof below; good choices turn out to be

$$x = y^u \text{ with } u = (1+\epsilon)\frac{\log\log x}{\log\log\log x}; \text{ and } z = \frac{x}{\log x}\cdot\frac{(\log\log x)^2}{\log\log\log x}.$$

Notice that $y \cdot \epsilon z \ge x$, and that $\Psi(x, y) = o(x/\log x)$ by Exercise 1.3.5.

(I) We select the congruence classes $a_p = 0 \pmod p$ for each prime $p \in (y, \epsilon z]$. Let

$$\mathcal{N}_0 := \{n \le x : \ n \not\equiv 0 \pmod p \text{ for all } p \in (y, \epsilon z]\}.$$

The integers n counted in $\mathcal{N}_0$ either have a prime factor $p > \epsilon z$ or not. If they do then we can write $n = mp$ so that $m = n/p \le x/\epsilon z \le y$ and therefore m is composed only of prime factors $\le y$. Otherwise if n does not have a large prime factor then all of its prime factors are $\le y$. By this decomposition, (1.1.7) and then

[4]For a randomly chosen interval, the proportion of integers removed when we sieve by the prime p is $\frac{1}{p}$; and the different primes act "independently".

Exercise exmertens 1.1.10, we have

$$\#\mathcal{N}_0 = \sum_{\epsilon z<p<x} [x/p] + \Psi(x,y) = \sum_{\epsilon z<p<x} \frac{x}{p} + O\left(\frac{x}{\log x}\right)$$
$$= x\log\left(\frac{\log x}{\log \epsilon z}\right) + O\left(\frac{x}{\log x}\right) \sim x\frac{\log\log x}{\log x}.$$

(II) Now for each consecutive prime $p_j \le y$ let

$$\mathcal{N}_j := \{n \in \mathcal{N}_0 :\ n \notin a_p \pmod p \text{ for all } p = p_1, \dots, p_j\}$$
$$= \{n \in \mathcal{N}_{j-1} :\ n \notin a_p \pmod p \text{ for } p = p_j\}.$$

We select a_p for $p = p_j$ so as to maximize $\#\{n \in \mathcal{N}_{j-1} :\ n \equiv a_p \pmod p\}$, which must be at least the average $\frac{1}{p}\ \#\mathcal{N}_{j-1}$. Hence $\#\mathcal{N}_j \le (1 - \frac{1}{p_j})\#\mathcal{N}_{j-1}$, and so if p_k is the largest prime $\le y$ then, by induction, we obtain that

$$r := \#\mathcal{N}_k \le \prod_{p\le y}\left(1 - \frac{1}{p}\right)\#\mathcal{N}_0 \sim \frac{e^{-\gamma}}{\log y}x\frac{\log\log x}{\log x} \sim e^{-\gamma}(1+\epsilon)\frac{z}{\log z}$$

using Mertens' Theorem. This implies that $r < \#\{p \in (\epsilon z, z]\}$ using (Cheb1 1.1.7) (which we proved there with constant $c = \log 2$), since $e^{-\gamma} < \log 2$.

(III) Let $\mathcal{N}_k = \{b_1, \dots, b_r\}$, and let $p_{\ell+1} < p_{\ell+2} < \dots < p_{\ell+r}$ be the r smallest primes in $(\epsilon z, z]$. Now let $a_p = b_j$ for $p = p_{\ell+j}$ for $j =, 2, \dots, r$. Hence every integer $n \le x$ belongs to an arithmetic progression $a_p \pmod p$ for some $p \le z$.

We have now shown how to choose $a_p \pmod p$ for each $p \le z$ so that every $n \le x$ belongs to at least one of these arithmetic progressions. By the Erdős shift we know that there exists $T \pmod m$, where $m = \prod_{p\le z} p$ for which $(T+j, m) > 1$ for $1 \le j \le x$. We select $T \in (m, 2m]$ to guarantee that every element of the interval $(T, T+x]$ is greater than any of the prime factors of m. Hence if p_n is the largest prime $\le T$, then $p_{n+1} - p_n > x$.

We need to determine how big this gap is compared to the size of the primes involved. Now $p_n \le 2m$ and $\log m \le \psi(z) \le z\log 4 + O(\log z)$ by (Cheb1 1.1.7), so that $z \ge \frac{2}{3}\log p_n$. This implies the theorem. □

Exercise 1.3.2. * Assuming the prime number theorem, improve the constant $\frac{1}{2}$ in this lower bound to $e^{\gamma} + o(1)$. [5]

The Erdős shift for arithmetic progressions: It is not difficult to modify the above argument to obtain large gaps between primes in any given arithmetic progression. However there is a direct connection between strings of consecutive composite numbers, and strings of consecutive composite numbers in an arithmetic progression: Let m be the product of a finite set of primes that do not divide q. Select integer r for which $qr \equiv 1 \pmod m$. Hence

$$(a + jq, m) = (ar + jqr, m) = (ar + j, m),$$

and so, for $T = ar$,

ErdosShift (1.3.9) $$\#\{1 \le j \le N :\ (a + jq, m) = 1\} = \#\{1 \le j \le N :\ (T + j, m) = 1\}.$$

[5] Using additional ideas, this has recently FGKT, Mayn2 [?, ?] been improved to allow any constant $c > 0$ in place of $\frac{1}{2}$, resolving the great Paul Erdős's favourite challenge problem. We shall return to this in chapter SelbergWtsAgain ??.

In other words, the sieving problem in an arithmetic progression is equivalent to sieving an interval.

1.3.4. Additional exercises

ex:3.4 EXERCISE 1.3.3. Suppose that f is a non-negative multiplicative function, for which $f(p^k)=0$ if $p>y$, and $\sum_{d\le D}\Lambda_f(d)\ll \min\{D, y^{\frac{\log D}{\log y}}\}$ for all $D\ge 1$. Prove that

$$\sum_{n\le x} f(n) \ll \frac{y^{1-\sigma}}{\sigma\log x} x^\sigma F(\sigma)$$

for any $0<\sigma\le 1$. When is this an improvement on the bound in Exercise 1.2.2?

EXERCISE 1.3.4. Prove that if f is a non-negative arithmetic function, and $F(\sigma)$ is convergent for some $0<\sigma<1$ then

$$\sum_{n\le x} f(n) + x\sum_{n>x}\frac{f(n)}{n} \le \frac{x^\sigma}{\sigma\log x}(F(\sigma)-\sigma F'(\sigma)).$$

(Hints: Either study the coefficient of each $f(n)$; or bound $\sum_{n\le x} f(n)\log(x/n)$ by integrating by parts, using the first part of Exercise 1.2.2, and then apply the second part of Exercise 1.2.2 for $(-F')$.)

ex2.8 EXERCISE 1.3.5. † For $x=y^u$ with $y>(\log x)^2$, let $\sigma = 1-\frac{\log(u\log u)}{\log y}$. If $y\le (\log x)^2$, let $\sigma=\frac12+\epsilon$.
(i) Deduce from Proposition 1.3.2 and exercise 1.2.2(ii), together with exercise 1.1.12, that there exists a constant $C>0$ such that

$$\Psi(x,y) + \prod_{p\le y}\left(1-\frac1p\right)\sum_{\substack{n>x\\ P(n)\le y}}\frac{x}{n} \ll x\left(\frac{C}{u\log u}\right)^u + x^{1/2+o(1)}.$$

(Hint: For small y, show that $\zeta(\sigma,y)\ll x^{o(1)}$.)
(ii) Suppose that f is a multiplicative function with $0\le f(n)\le 1$ for all integers n, supported only on the y-smooth integers. Prove that

$$\sum_{\substack{n>x\\ P(n)\le y}}\frac{f(n)}{n} \ll \left(\left(\frac{C}{u\log u}\right)^u + \frac{1}{x^{1/2+o(1)}}\right)\prod_{p\le y}\left(1+\frac{f(p)}{p}+\frac{f(p^2)}{p^2}+\dots\right),$$

where $x=y^u$ with $u\ge 1$. (Hint: Prove the result for totally multiplicative f, by using exercise 1.2.3 to bound $\mathcal{R}(f;\infty)-\mathcal{R}(f;x)$ in terms of the analogous sum for the characteristic function for the y-smooth integers. Then extend this result to all such f.)
(iii) Suppose now that f is a multiplicative function with $0\le f(n)\le d_\kappa(n)$ for all integers n, supported only on the y-smooth integers. State and prove a result analogous to (ii). (Hint: One replaces C by C^κ. One should treat the primes $p\le 2\kappa$ by a separate argument)

ex2.9 EXERCISE 1.3.6. Prove that

$$\rho(u) = \left(\frac{e+o(1)}{u\log u}\right)^u.$$

(Hint: Select c maximal such that $\rho(u) \gg (c/u \log u)^u$. By using the functional equation for ρ deduce that $c \geq e$. Take a similar approach for the implicit upper bound.)

ex2.10

EXERCISE 1.3.7. * A permutation $\pi \in S_n$ is *m-smooth* if its cycle decomposition contains only cycles with length at most m. Let $N(n,m)$ denote the number of m-smooth permutations in S_n. (i) Prove that

$$n\frac{N(n,m)}{n!} = \sum_{j=1}^{m} \frac{N(n-j,m)}{(n-j)!}.$$

(ii) Deduce that $N(n,m) \geq \rho(n/m)n!$ holds for all $m,\ n \geq 1$.
(iii)† Prove that there is a constant C such that for all $m,\ n \geq 1$, we have

$$\frac{N(n,m)}{n!} \leq \rho\Big(\frac{n}{m}\Big) + \frac{C}{m}.$$

(One can take $C = 1$ in this result.)
Therefore, a random permutation in S_n is n/u-smooth with probability $\to \rho(u)$ as $n \to \infty$.

CHAPTER 1.4

Selberg's sieve applied to an arithmetic progression

In order to develop the theory of mean-values of multiplicative functions, we shall need an estimate for the number of primes in short intervals. We need only an upper estimate for the number of such primes, and this can be achieved by a simple sieve method, and does not need results of the strength of the prime number theorem. We describe a beautiful method of Selberg which works well in this and many other applications. In fact, several different sieve techniques would also work; see, e.g., Friedlander and Iwaniec's *Opera de Cribro* for a thorough treatment of sieves and their many applications.

1.4.1. Selberg's sieve

C71

Let $\mathcal{I}$ be the set of integers in the interval $(x, x+y]$, that are $\equiv a \pmod q$. For a given integer P which is coprime to q, we wish to estimate the number of integers in $\mathcal{I}$ that are coprime to P; that is, the integers that remain when $\mathcal{I}$ is *sieved* (or *sifted*) by the primes dividing P. Selberg's sieve yields a good upper bound for this quantity. Note that this quantity, plus the number of primes dividing P, is an upper bound for the number of primes in $\mathcal{I}$; selecting P well will give us the Brun-Titchmarsh theorem. When P is the product of the primes $\le x^{1/u}$, other than those that divide q, we will obtain (for suitably large u) strong upper and lower bounds for the size of the sifted set; this result, which we develop in Section C73 1.4.2, is a simplified version of the *fundamental lemma of sieve theory*.

Let $\lambda_1 = 1$ and let λ_d be any sequence of real numbers for which $\lambda_d \neq 0$ only when $d \in S(R, P)$, which is the set of integers $d \le R$ such that d is composed entirely of primes dividing P (where R is a parameter to be chosen later). We say that λ is *supported* on $S(R, P)$. Selberg's sieve is based on the simple idea that squares of real numbers are ≥ 0, and so

$$\Big(\sum_{d|n} \lambda_d\Big)^2 \text{ is } \begin{cases} = 1 & \text{if } (n, P) = 1 \\ \ge 0 & \text{always.} \end{cases}$$

Therefore we obtain that

$$\sum_{\substack{n\in\mathcal{I} \\ (n,P)=1}} 1 \le \sum_{n\in\mathcal{I}} \Big(\sum_{d|n} \lambda_d\Big)^2.$$

Expanding out the inner sum over d, the first term on the right hand side above is

$$\sum_{d_1,d_2} \lambda_{d_1}\lambda_{d_2} \sum_{\substack{x<n\le x+y \\ n\equiv a \pmod q \\ [d_1,d_2]|n}} 1,$$

where $[d_1, d_2]$ denotes the l.c.m. of d_1 and d_2. Since P is coprime to q, we have $\lambda_d = 0$ whenever $(d, q) \neq 1$. Therefore the inner sum over n above is over one congruence class $\pmod{q[d_1, d_2]}$, and so within 1 of $y/(q[d_1, d_2])$. We conclude that

E3.1

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{\substack{n \in \mathcal{I} \\ (n,P)=1}} 1 &\leq \frac{y}{q} \sum_{d_1,d_2} \frac{\lambda_{d_1}\lambda_{d_2}}{[d_1, d_2]} + \sum_{d_1,d_2} |\lambda_{d_1}\lambda_{d_2}| \\ &= \frac{y}{q} \sum_{d_1,d_2} \frac{\lambda_{d_1}\lambda_{d_2}}{[d_1, d_2]} + \Big(\sum_d |\lambda_d| \Big)^2 \end{aligned} \tag{1.4.1}$$

The second term here is obtained from the accumulated errors obtained when we estimated the number of elements of $\mathcal{I}$ in given congruence classes. In order that each error is small compared to the main term, we need that 1 is small compared to $y/(q[d_1, d_2])$, that is $[d_1, d_2]$ should be small compared to y/q. Now if d_1, d_2 are coprime and close to R then this forces the restriction that $R \ll \sqrt{y/q}$.

The first term in (1.4.1) is a quadratic form in the variables λ_d, which we wish to minimize subject to the linear constraint $\lambda_1 = 1$. Selberg made the remarkable observation that this quadratic form can be elegantly diagonalized, which allowed him to determine the optimal choices for the λ_d: Since $[d_1, d_2] = d_1 d_2/(d_1, d_2)$, and $(d_1, d_2) = \sum_{\ell | (d_1,d_2)} \phi(\ell)$ we have

E3.2

$$\sum_{d_1,d_2} \frac{\lambda_{d_1}\lambda_{d_2}}{[d_1, d_2]} = \sum_\ell \phi(\ell) \sum_{\substack{\ell | d_1 \\ \ell | d_2}} \frac{\lambda_{d_1}}{d_1} \frac{\lambda_{d_2}}{d_2} = \sum_\ell \frac{\phi(\ell)}{\ell^2} \Big(\sum_d \frac{\lambda_{d\ell}}{d} \Big)^2 = \sum_\ell \frac{\phi(\ell)}{\ell^2} \xi_\ell^2, \tag{1.4.2}$$

where each

$$\xi_\ell = \sum_d \frac{\lambda_{d\ell}}{d}.$$

So we have diagonalized the quadratic form. Note that if $\xi_\ell \neq 0$ then $\ell \in S(R, P)$, just like the λ_d's.

We claim that (1.4.2) provides the desired diagonalization of the quadratic form. To prove this, we must show that this change of variables is invertible, which is not difficult using the fact that $\mu * 1 = \delta$. Thus

$$\lambda_d = \sum_\ell \frac{\lambda_{d\ell}}{\ell} \sum_{r|\ell} \mu(r) = \sum_r \mu(r) \sum_{r|\ell} \frac{\lambda_{d\ell}}{\ell} = \sum_r \frac{\mu(r)}{r} \xi_{dr}.$$

In particular, the constraint $\lambda_1 = 1$ becomes

E3.3

$$1 = \sum_r \frac{\mu(r)}{r} \xi_r. \tag{1.4.3}$$

We have transformed our problem to minimizing the diagonal quadratic form in (1.4.2) subject to the constraint in (1.4.3). Calculus reveals that the optimal choice is when ξ_r is proportional to $\mu(r)r/\phi(r)$ for each $r \in S(R, P)$ (and 0 otherwise). The constant of proportionality can be determined from (1.4.3) and we conclude that the optimal choice is to take (for $r \in S(R, P)$)

E3.4

$$\xi_r = \frac{1}{L(R; P)} \frac{r\mu(r)}{\phi(r)} \qquad \text{where} \qquad L(R; P) := \sum_{\substack{r \leq R \\ p|r \implies p|P}} \frac{\mu(r)^2}{\phi(r)}. \tag{1.4.4}$$

For this choice, the quadratic form in (1.4.2) attains its minimum value, which is $1/L(R;P)$. Note also that for this choice of ξ, we have (for $d \in S(R,P)$)

$$\lambda_d = \frac{1}{L(R;P)} \sum_{\substack{r \le R/d \\ p|r \implies p|P}} \frac{d\mu(r)\mu(dr)}{\phi(dr)},$$

and so

E3.5

$$\sum_{d \le R} |\lambda_d| \le \frac{1}{L(R;P)} \sum_{\substack{d,r \\ dr \le R \\ p|dr \implies p|P}} \frac{\mu(dr)^2 d}{\phi(dr)} = \frac{1}{L(R;P)} \sum_{\substack{n \le R \\ p|n \implies p|P}} \frac{\mu(n)^2\sigma(n)}{\phi(n)}, \tag{1.4.5}$$

where $\sigma(n) = \sum_{d|n} d$.

Putting these observations together, we arrive at the following Theorem.

thm7.1

THEOREM 1.4.1. *Suppose that $(P,q) = 1$. The number of integers from the interval $[x, x+y]$ that are in the arithmetic progression $a \pmod q$, and are coprime to P, is bounded above by*

$$\frac{y}{qL(R;P)} + \frac{1}{L(R;P)^2}\Big(\sum_{\substack{n \le R \\ p|n \implies p|P}} \frac{\mu(n)^2\sigma(n)}{\phi(n)} \Big)^2$$

for any given $R \ge 1$, where $L(R;P)$ is as in (1.4.4).

C73

1.4.2. The Fundamental Lemma of Sieve Theory

We will need estimates for the number of integers in an interval of an arithmetic progression that are left unsieved by a subset of the primes up to some bound. Sieve theory provides a strong estimate for this quantity, and indeed the *fundamental Lemma of sieve theory* provides an extraordinarily precise answer for a big generalization of this question. Given our limited needs we will provide a self-contained proof, though note that it is somewhat weaker than what follows from the strongest known versions of the fundamental lemma.

FLS

THEOREM 1.4.2 (The Fundamental Lemma of Sieve Theory). *Let P be an integer with $(P,q) = 1$, such that every prime factor of P is $\le (y/q)^{1/u}$ for some given $u \ge 1$. Then, uniformly, we have*

$$\sum_{\substack{x < n \le x+y \\ (n,P)=1 \\ n \equiv a \pmod q}} 1 = \frac{y}{q}\frac{\phi(P)}{P}\Big(1 + O(u^{-u/2})\Big) + O\Big(\Big(\frac{y}{q}\Big)^{3/4+o(1)}\Big).$$

As mentioned already, one can obtain stronger results by other methods. In particular, the error terms above may be improved to $O(u^{-u})$ in place of $O(u^{-u/2})$, and $O((y/q)^{1/2+o(1)})$ in place of $O((y/q)^{3/4+o(1)})$.

We will obtain the upper bound of the Fundamental Lemma by directly applying Theorem 1.4.1 and using our understanding of multiplicative functions to evaluate the various terms there.

We will deduce the lower bound from the upper bound, via a *sieve identity*, which is a technique that often works in sieve theory. We have already seen sieve identities in the previous chapter (e.g. (1.3.1) and (1.3.5)), and they are often used to turn upper bounds into lower bounds. In this case we wish to count the number of integers in a given set $\mathcal{I}$ that are coprime to a given integer P. We begin by writing $P = p_1 \cdots p_k$ with $p_1 < p_2 < \ldots < p_k$, and $P_j = \prod_{i=1}^{j-1} p_i$ for each $j > 1$, with P_1 being interpreted as 1. Since every element in I is either coprime to P, or its common factor with P has a smallest prime factor p_j for some j, we have

SieveId1
$$\#\{n \in \mathcal{I} : (n, P) = 1\} = \#\mathcal{I} - \sum_{j=1}^{k} \#\{n \in \mathcal{I} : p_j | n \text{ and } (n, P_j) = 1\}. \tag{1.4.6}$$

Good upper bounds on each $\#\{n \in \mathcal{I} : p_j | n \text{ and } (n, P_j) = 1\}$ will therefore yield a good lower bound on $\#\{n \in \mathcal{I} : (n, P) = 1\}$.

Proof. We again let $\mathcal{I} := \{n \in (x, x+y] : \ n \equiv a \pmod q\}$. We prove the upper bound using Theorem 1.4.1 with $R = \sqrt{y/q}$. Therefore if $p|P$ then $p \le y := R^{2/u}$, and so

$$\begin{aligned} L(R;P) &= \sum_{\substack{r \ge 1 \\ p|r \implies p|P}} \frac{\mu(r)^2}{\phi(r)} + O\Big(\sum_{\substack{r > R \\ p|r \implies p|P}} \frac{\mu(r)^2}{\phi(r)} \Big) \\ &= \frac{P}{\phi(P)} \Big\{ 1 + O\Big(\Big(\frac{C}{u \log u} \Big)^{u/2} + \frac{1}{R^{1/2+o(1)}} \Big) \Big\} \end{aligned}$$

by exercise 1.3.5(iii) with $\kappa = 2$ for the error term. Moreover, by the Cauchy-Schwarz inequality, and then exercises 1.2.11 and 1.3.5(i), we have

$$\Big(\sum_{\substack{n \le R \\ p|n \implies p|P}} \frac{\mu(n)^2 \sigma(n)}{\phi(n)} \Big)^2 \le \Big(\sum_{n \le R} \frac{\sigma(n)^2}{\phi(n)^2} \Big) \Psi(R, R^{2/u}) \ll R^2 \Big(\frac{C}{u \log u} \Big)^{u/2}.$$

Inserting these estimates into the bound of Theorem 1.4.1, yields the upper bound

$$\sum_{\substack{n \in \mathcal{I} \\ (n,P)=1}} 1 \le \frac{y}{q} \frac{\phi(P)}{P} \Big(1 + O\Big(\Big(\frac{C}{u \log u} \Big)^{u/2} \Big) \Big) + O\Big(\Big(\frac{y}{q} \Big)^{3/4+o(1)} \Big),$$

which implies the upper bound claimed, with improved error terms.

We now prove the lower bound using (1.4.6), and that $\#\mathcal{I} = y/q + O(1)$. The upper bound that we just proved implies that

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{\substack{n \in \mathcal{I} \\ p_j | n \\ (n,P_j)=1}} 1 = & \sum_{\substack{x/p_j < n \le (x+y)/p_j \\ (n,P_j)=1 \\ n \equiv a p_j^{-1} \pmod q}} 1 \\ & \le \frac{y}{q p_j} \frac{\phi(P_j)}{P_j} \Big(1 + O\Big(\Big(\frac{C}{u_j \log u_j} \Big)^{u_j/2} \Big) \Big) + O\Big(\Big(\frac{y}{q p_j} \Big)^{3/4+o(1)} \Big), \end{aligned}$$

where $u_j := \log(y/qp_j)/\log p_j$. Inserting this into (1.4.6), for the main term we have

$$1 - \sum_{j=1}^{k} \frac{1}{p_j} \frac{\phi(P_j)}{P_j} = \frac{\phi(P)}{P}.$$

Since the second error term is larger than the first only when $u \to \infty$, hence when we sum over all p_j, the second error term remains $\ll (y/q)^{3/4+o(1)}$. For the first error term we begin by noting that $u_j = \log(y/q)/\log p_j - 1 \ge u - 1$ and so

$(u_j/u)^2(C/u_j \log u_j)^{u_j/2} \ll (C'/u \log u)^{u/2}$ for some constant $C' > 0$. We deal with the sum over j by then noting that $\phi(P_j)/P_j \ll (u_j/u)\phi(P)/P$ and so

$$\sum_{j=1}^{k} \frac{1}{p_j} \frac{\phi(P_j)}{P_j} \frac{u^2}{u_j^2} \ll \frac{\phi(P)}{P} \frac{u}{\log(y/q)} \sum_{p \le (y/q)^{1/u}} \frac{\log p}{p} \ll \frac{\phi(P)}{P},$$

by (1.1.10). This completes our proof. □

FLS3 Exercise 1.4.1. * Suppose that y, z, q are integers for which $\log q \le z \le y/q$, and let $m = \prod_{p \le z} p$. Use the Fundamental Lemma of Sieve Theory to prove that if $(a, q) = 1$ then

$$\sum_{\substack{x < n \le x+y \\ n \equiv a \pmod q \\ (n,m)=1}} 1 \ll \frac{y}{\phi(q) \log z}.$$

Taking the special case here with $z = (y/q)^{1/2}$, and trivially bounding the number of primes $\le z$ that are $\equiv a \pmod q$, we deduce the most interesting corollary to Theorem 1.4.2:

BTfromFLS Corollary 1.4.3 (The Brun-Titchmarsh Theorem). *Let $\pi(x; q, a)$ denote the number of primes $p \le x$ with $p \equiv a \pmod q$. There exists a constant $\kappa > 0$ such that*

$$\pi(x + y; q, a) - \pi(x; q, a) \le \frac{\kappa y}{\phi(q) \log(y/q)}.$$

1.4.3. A stronger Brun-Titchmarsh Theorem

We have just seen that sieve methods can give an upper bound for the number of primes in an interval $(x, x + y]$ that belong to the arithmetic progression $a \pmod q$. The smallest explicit constant κ known for Corollary 1.4.3 is $\kappa = 2$, due to Montgomery and Vaughan, which we prove in this section using the Selberg sieve:

BTstrong Theorem 1.4.4. *There is a constant $C > 1$ such that if $y/q \ge C$ then*

OurBT (1.4.7)
$$\pi(x + y; q, a) - \pi(x; q, a) \le \frac{2y}{\phi(q) \log(y/q)},$$

for any arithmetic progression $a \pmod q$ with $(a, q) = 1$.

Since $\pi(x + y; q, a) - \pi(x; q, a) \le y/q + 1$, we deduce (1.4.7) for $q \le y \le q \exp(q/\phi(q))$.

One can considerably simplify proofs in this area using *Selberg's monotonicity principle*: For given integers $\omega(p) < p$, for each prime p, and any integer N, define

$$\mathcal{S}^+(N, \{\omega(p)\}_p) := \max_{\substack{\mathcal{I} \text{ an interval} \\ \#(\mathcal{I} \cap \mathbb{Z}) = N}} \max_{\substack{\Omega(p) \subset \mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}\ \forall p \\ \#\Omega(p) = \omega(p)}} \frac{\#\{n \in \mathcal{I} :\ n \notin \Omega(p) \text{ for all primes } p\}}{\#\mathcal{I}\ \prod_p \left(1 - \frac{\omega(p)}{p}\right)}$$

where the first "max" is over all intervals containing exactly N integers, and the second "max" is over all sets $\Omega(p)$ of $\omega(p)$ residue classes mod p, for each prime p. We can analogously define $\mathcal{S}^-(N, \{\omega(p)\}_p)$ as the minimum.

Selbergmonotone Lemma 1.4.5 (Selberg's monotonicity principle). *If $\omega_1(p) \le \omega_2(p)$ for all primes p then, for all integers $N \ge 1$,*

$$\mathcal{S}^+(N, \{\omega_2(p)\}_p) \ge \mathcal{S}^+(N, \{\omega_1(p)\}_p) \ge \mathcal{S}^-(N, \{\omega_1(p)\}_p) \ge \mathcal{S}^-(N, \{\omega_2(p)\}_p).$$

Proof. We shall establish the result when $\omega'(p) = \omega(p)$ for all primes $p \neq q$, and $\omega'(q) = \omega(q) + 1$, and then the full result follows by induction. So given the sets $\{\Omega(p)\}_p$ and an interval $\mathcal{I}$, let $\mathcal{N} := \{n \in \mathcal{I} : \ n \notin \Omega(p) \text{ for all primes } p\}$. Let m be the product of all primes $p \neq q$ with $\omega(p) \neq 0$, and then define $\mathcal{I}_j := \mathcal{I} + jm$ for $j = 0, 1, \dots, q-1$. Define $J := \{j \in [0, q-1] : \ -jm \notin \Omega(q)\}$ so that $\#J = q - \omega(q)$. Let $\Omega_j(p) = \Omega(p)$ for all $p \neq q$ and $\Omega_j(q) = (\Omega(q) + jm) \cup \{0\}$; notice that $\#\Omega_j(q) = \#\Omega(q) + 1$ whenever $j \in J$. Moreover, letting $\mathcal{N}_j := \{n + jm \in \mathcal{I}_j : \ n + jm \notin \Omega_j(p) \text{ for all primes } p\}$ we have

$$\#\mathcal{N}_j = \#\mathcal{N} \setminus \#\{n \in \mathcal{N} : \ n \equiv -jm \pmod q\}.$$

We sum this equality over every $j \in J$. Notice that each $n \in \mathcal{N}$ satisfies $n \equiv -jm \pmod q$ for a unique $j \in J$, and hence $\sum_{j \in J} \#\mathcal{N}_j = (\#J - 1)\#\mathcal{N}$, which implies that

$$\#\mathcal{N} \leq \frac{(1 - \omega(q)/q)}{(1 - \omega'(q)/q)} \ \max_{j \in J} \#\mathcal{N}_j;$$

and therefore $\mathcal{S}^+(N, \{\omega(p)\}_p) \leq \mathcal{S}^+(N, \{\omega'(p)\}_p)$. The last step can be reworked, analogously, to also yield $\mathcal{S}^-(N, \{\omega(p)\}_p) \geq \mathcal{S}^-(N, \{\omega'(p)\}_p)$. □

Proof of Theorem 1.4.4. Let P be the set of primes $\leq R$ so that Proposition 1.2.5 (with $\sigma = \frac{3}{4}$ say) yields

$$L(R; P) \geq \log R + \gamma' + o(1)$$

where $\gamma' := \gamma + \sum_p \frac{\log p}{p(p-1)}$; and Exercise 1.2.12 gives that

$$\sum_{n \leq R} \frac{\mu(n)^2 \sigma(n)}{\phi(n)} = \frac{15}{\pi^2} R + o(R).$$

Inserting these estimates into Theorem 1.4.1 with $R := \frac{\pi^2}{15}\sqrt{\frac{y}{2}}$ we deduce that

FirstSieve
$$\#\{n \in [x, x+y) : \ (n, P) = 1\} \leq \frac{2y}{\log y + c + o(1)} \tag{1.4.8}$$

where $c := 2\gamma' - 1 - \log 2 + 2\log(\pi^2/15) = 0.1346\dots$ This implies (1.4.7) for $q = 1$ when $y \geq C$, for some constant C (given by when $c + o(1) > 0$).

Given y and q, let $Y = y/q$ and let m be the product of the primes $\leq R$ that do not divide q. Suppose that $Y \geq C$.

Let $\{a + jq : 1 \leq j \leq N\}$ be the integers $\in (x, x+y]$ in the arithmetic progression $a \pmod q$ (so that $N = Y + O(1)$). By (1.3.9) we know that the number of these integers that are coprime to m, equals exactly the number of integers in some interval of length N that are coprime to m, and this is $\leq \mathcal{S}^+(N, \{\omega_1(p)\}_p)$, by definition, where $\Omega_1(p) = \{0\}$ for each $p|m$ and $\Omega_1(p) = \emptyset$ otherwise. Now suppose that $\Omega_2(p) = \{0\}$ for each $p|P$ and $\Omega_2(p) = \emptyset$ otherwise, so that Selberg's monotonicity principle implies that $\mathcal{S}^+(N, \{\omega_1(p)\}_p) \leq \mathcal{S}^+(N, \{\omega_2(p)\}_p)$. In other words

$$\max_x \#\{n \in (x, x+N] : \ (n, m) = 1\} \leq \frac{P/m}{\phi(P/m)} \cdot \max_T \#\{n \in (T, T+N] : \ (n, P) = 1\},$$

and the result follows from (1.4.8) since P/m divides q.

□

1.4.4. Sieving complex-valued functions

In our subsequent work we shall need estimates for

$$\sum_{\substack{n\le x\\(n,P)=1}} n^{it},$$

where t is some real number, and P is composed of primes smaller than some parameter y. It is perhaps unusual to sieve the values of a complex valued function (since the core of every sieve methods involves sharp inequalities). In this section we show that the estimates developed so far allow such a variant of the fundamental lemma.

FLit PROPOSITION 1.4.6. *Let t and y be real numbers with $y \ge 1+|t|$ and let $x = y^u$ with $u \ge 1$. Let P be an integer composed of primes smaller than y. Then*

$$\sum_{\substack{n\le x\\(n,P)=1}} n^{it} = \frac{x^{1+it}}{1+it}\frac{\phi(P)}{P} + O\Big(x\frac{\phi(P)}{P}u^{-u/2} + x^{\frac34+\epsilon}\Big).$$

PROOF. Let λ_d be weights as in Selberg's sieve, supported on the set $S(R,P)$. Since $(\sum_{d|n}\lambda_d)^2$ is at least 1 if $(n,P)=1$ and non-negative otherwise, it follows that

FLit1
$$\sum_{\substack{n\le x\\(n,P)=1}} n^{it} = \sum_{n\le x} n^{it}\Big(\sum_{d|n}\lambda_d\Big)^2 + O\Big(\sum_{n\le x}\Big(\sum_{d|n}\lambda_d\Big)^2 - \sum_{\substack{n\le x\\(n,P)=1}} 1\Big). \tag{1.4.9}$$

The error term here is precisely that considered in the proof of Theorem 1.4.2 and so we can use the bound from there.

A straightforward argument using partial summation shows that

$$\sum_{n\le N} n^{it} = \frac{N^{1+it}}{1+it} + O((1+|t|)\log N),$$

and therefore for any d

$$\sum_{\substack{n\le N\\d|n}} n^{it} = d^{it}\sum_{m\le N/d} m^{it} = \frac{1}{d}\cdot\frac{N^{1+it}}{1+it} + O((1+|t|)\log N).$$

Therefore the main term in (1.4.9) equals

$$\sum_{d_1,d_2}\lambda_{d_1}\lambda_{d_2}\sum_{\substack{n\le x\\ [d_1,d_2]|n}} n^{it} = \frac{x^{1+it}}{1+it}\sum_{d_1,d_2}\frac{\lambda_{d_1}\lambda_{d_2}}{[d_1,d_2]} + O\Big((1+|t|)\log x\Big(\sum_d|\lambda_d|\Big)^2\Big).$$

We have seen the sum in the main term in (1.4.2), and that it equals $1/L(R;P)$. The error term is bounded by using (1.4.5). These can both be evaluated using the estimates proved (for this purpose) in the proof of Theorem 1.4.2. □

1.4.5. Multiplicative functions that only vary at small prime factors

C2a

The characteristic function of the integers that are coprime to P, is given by the totally multiplicative function f with $f(p)=0$ when $p|P$, and $f(p)=1$ otherwise. Hence Theorem 1.4.2 (with $x=a=0$, $q=1$) can be viewed as a mean value theorem for a certain class of multiplicative functions (those which only take values

0 and 1, and equal 1 on all primes $p > y$). We now deduce a result of this type for a wider class of multiplicative functions:

GenFundLem

PROPOSITION 1.4.7. *Suppose that $|f(n)| \leq 1$ for all n, and $f(p^k) = 1$ for all $p > y$. If $x = y^u$ then*

$$\frac{1}{x}\sum_{n\leq x} f(n) = \mathcal{P}(f;x) + O\Big(u^{-u/3+o(u)} + x^{-1/6+o(1)}\Big).$$

This result is weaker than desirable since if u is bounded then the first error term is bigger than the main term unless $\sum_{p\leq x}\frac{1-f(p)}{p}$ is very small. We would prefer an estimate like $\mathcal{P}(f;x)\{1+O(u^{-c_1u})\}+O(x^{-c_2})$ for some $c_1, c_2 > 0$. When each $f(p) = 0$ or 1 this is essentially the Fundamental lemma of the sieve (Theorem 1.4.2). However it is false, in general, as one may see in Proposition ?? and even for real-valued f, as may be seen by taking $f(p) = -1$ for all $p \leq y$ (though we only prove this later in chapter ??). We guess that one does have an estimate $\mathcal{P}(f;x)\{1+O(u^{-cu})\}+O(\frac{1}{\log x})$, for real f with each $f(p) \in [-1,1]$, a challenging open problem.

PROOF OF PROPOSITION 1.4.7. We may write each integer n as ab where $P(a) \leq y$, and $p|b \implies p > y$, so that $f(n) = f(a)f(b) = f(a)$, and thus

$$\sum_{n\leq x} f(n) = \sum_{\substack{a\leq x\\ P(a)\leq y}} f(a) \sum_{\substack{b\leq x/a\\ p|b \implies p>y}} 1.$$

If $a \geq x/y$ then the inner sum equals 1, as it only counts the integer 1. Otherwise we apply Theorem 1.4.2 with $P = \prod_{p\leq y} p$ (and taking there x, y, a, q as $0, x, 0, 1$, respectively). If $A = x^{1/3} < a < x/y$ then we deduce the crude upper bound $\ll x/(a\log y)$ for the inner sum, by Merten's Theorem. Finally if $a \leq x^{1/3}$ then $\log(x/a)/\log y \geq 2u/3$, giving $\frac{\phi(P)}{P}\frac{x}{a}(1+O(u^{-u/3+o(1)}))+O((\frac{x}{a})^{3/4+o(1)})$ for the inner sum. Combining these estimates, we now have a main term of

$$\frac{\phi(P)}{P}\; x \sum_{\substack{a\geq 1\\ P(a)\leq y}} \frac{f(a)}{a} = \mathcal{P}(f;x)\; x,$$

and an error term which is

$$\ll u^{-u/3+o(1)} x\frac{\phi(P)}{P}\sum_{\substack{a\geq 1\\ P(a)\leq y}}\frac{1}{a} + \sum_{a\leq x^{1/3}}\Big(\frac{x}{a}\Big)^{3/4+o(1)} + \frac{x}{\log y}\sum_{\substack{a>x^{1/3}\\ P(a)\leq y}}\frac{1}{a} + \sum_{\substack{x/y\leq a\leq x\\ P(a)\leq y}} 1$$

$$\ll u^{-u/3+o(1)}x + x^{5/6+o(1)}$$

as desired, using exercise 1.3.5(i) to bound the last two sums. □

1.4.6. Additional exercises

EXERCISE 1.4.2. * Prove that our choice of λ_d (as in section 1.4.1) is only supported on squarefree integers d and that $0 \leq \mu(d)\lambda_d \leq 1$.

EXERCISE 1.4.3. * (i) Prove the following *reciprocity law*: If $L(d)$ and $Y(r)$ are supported only on the squarefree integers then

$$Y(r) := \mu(r)\sum_{m:\ r|m} L(m) \text{ for all } r \geq 1 \text{ if and only if } L(d) = \mu(d)\sum_{n:\ d|n} Y(n) \text{ for all } d \geq 1.$$

(ii) Deduce the relationship, given in Selberg's sieve, between the sequences λ_d/d and $\mu(r)\xi_r/r$.
(iii) Suppose that g is a multiplicative function and $f = 1 * g$. Prove that

$$\sum_{d_1,d_2\geq 1} L(d_1)L(d_2)f((d_1,d_2)) = \sum_{n\geq 1} g(n)Y(n)^2.$$

(iv) Suppose that L is supported only on squarefree integers in $S(R,P)$. Show that to maximize the expression in (iii), where each $f(p) > 1$, subject to the constraint $L(1) = 1$, we have that Y is supported only on $S(R,P)$, and then $Y(n) = c/g(n)$ where $c = \sum_n 1/g(n)$. Use this to determine the value of each $L(m)$ in terms of g.
(v) Prove that $0 \leq f(m)\mu(m)L(m) \leq 1$ for all m; and if $R = \infty$ then $L(m) = \mu(m)/f(m)$ for all $m \in S(P)$.

FLS1 EXERCISE 1.4.4. * Show that if $(am,q) = 1$ and all of the prime factors of m are $\leq (x/q)^{1/u}$ then

$$\sum_{\substack{n\leq x\\ (n,m)=1\\ n\equiv a \pmod q}} \log n = \frac{\phi(m)}{m}\frac{x}{q}(\log x - 1)\Big\{1 + O(u^{-u/2})\Big\} + O\Big(\Big(\frac{x}{q}\Big)^{3/4+o(1)}\log x\Big).$$

EXERCISE 1.4.5. † Fill in the final computational details of the proof of Theorem 1.4.4 to determine a value for C.

EXERCISE 1.4.6. Use Selberg's monotonicity principle, and exercise 1.2.10 with $q = \prod_{p\leq z} p$ where $z = (y/q)^{1/u}$ (and exercise 1.1.12) to prove the Fundamental Lemma of Sieve Theory in the form

$$\sum_{\substack{x<n\leq x+y\\ (n,P)=1\\ n\equiv a \pmod q}} 1 = \frac{y}{q}\frac{\phi(P)}{P} + O\Big(\frac{y}{q}\,\Big(\frac{e+o(1)}{u\log u}\Big)^u \cdot \log y\Big).$$

EXERCISE 1.4.7. Prove that if P is the set of all primes $\leq y$, and $0 < |t| \leq y$ then for any x we have

$$\sum_{\substack{n\leq x\\ (n,P)=1}} \frac{1}{n^{1+it}} \ll 1 + \frac{1}{|t|\log y}.$$

EXERCISE 1.4.8. Suppose that $f(n)$ is a multiplicative function with each $|f(n)| \leq 1$. Prove that

$$\sum_{\substack{n\leq x\\ (n,P)=1}} f(n) - \frac{\phi(P)}{P}\sum_{n\leq x} f(n)$$

$$\ll x\frac{\phi(P)}{P}u^{-u/2} + x^{\frac{3}{4}+\epsilon} + \sum_{d\leq R^2}\mu^2(d)3^{\omega(d)}\left|\sum_{\substack{n\leq x\\ d|n}} f(n) - \frac{1}{d}\sum_{n\leq x} f(n)\right|,$$

where $\omega(d)$ denotes the number of prime factors of d. (Hint: Modify the technique of Proposition 1.4.6.)

CHAPTER 1.5

The structure of mean values

MeanF(n)

We have encountered two basic types of mean values of multiplicative functions:

• In Chapter 1.2 we gave a heuristic which suggested that the mean value of f up to x, should be $\sim \mathcal{P}(f;x)$. We were able to show this when $\sum_{p\le x} |1-f(p)|/p$ is small, and in particular in the case that $f(p)=1$ for all "large" primes, that is. for the primes $p>y$ (Proposition 1.4.7).

• In Chapter 1.3 we considered an example in which the mean value is far smaller than the heuristic, in this case $f(p)=1$ for all "large" primes, that is. for the primes $p\le y$.

These behaviours are very different, though arise from quite different types of multiplicative functions (the first varies from 1 on the "small primes", the second on the "large primes"). In the next two sections we study the latter case in more generality, and then consider multiplicative functions which vary on both the small and large primes. The error terms in most of the results proved in this chapter will be improved later once we have established some fundamental estimates of the subject.

1.5.1. Some familiar Averages

Let f be a multiplicative function with each $|f(n)|\le 1$, and then let

$$S(x)=\sum_{n\le x} f(n) \quad \text{and} \quad -\frac{F'(s)}{F(s)}=\sum_{n\ge 1}\Lambda_f(n)/n^s.$$

Looking at the coefficients of $-F'(s)=F(s)\cdot(-\frac{F'(s)}{F(s)})$ we obtain that

$$f(n)\log n=\sum_{ab=n} f(a)\Lambda_f(b).$$

Summing this over all $n\le x$, and using exercise 1.2.15(i), we deduce that

$$S(x)\log x=\sum_{n\le x}\Lambda_f(n)S(x/n)+\int_1^x \frac{S(t)}{t}dt.$$

Now, as $|S(t)|\le t$ the last term is $O(x)$. The terms in the sum for which n is a prime power also contribute $O(x)$, and hence

HildIdentity

$$S(x)\log x=\sum_{p\le x} f(p)\log p\ S(x/p)+O(x). \tag{1.5.1}$$

This is a generalization of the identities in exercise 1.1.16 (i, iii), and (1.3.1).

1.5.2. Multiplicative functions that vary only the large prime factors

Our goal is to use the identity in (1.5.1) to gain an understanding of $S(x)$ in the spirit of chapter 1.3. To proceed we define functions

$$s(u) := y^{-u} S(y^u) = \frac{1}{y^u} \sum_{n \le y^u} f(n) \quad \text{and} \quad \chi(u) := \frac{1}{y^u} \sum_{m \le y^u} \Lambda_f(m).$$

Using the definitions, we now evaluate, for $x = y^u$, the integral

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{u} \int_0^u s(u-t)\chi(t)dt &= \frac{1}{u} \int_0^u \frac{1}{y^{u-t}} \sum_{a \le y^{u-t}} f(a) \cdot \frac{1}{y^t} \sum_{b \le y^t} \Lambda_f(b) dt \\ &= \frac{1}{x} \sum_{ab \le x} f(a) \Lambda_f(b) \frac{1}{u} \int_{\frac{\log b}{\log y}}^{u - \frac{\log a}{\log y}} 1 dt \\ &= \frac{1}{x} \sum_{n \le x} f(n) \log n \left(1 - \frac{\log n}{\log x}\right). \end{aligned}$$

The difference between this and $\frac{1}{x} \sum_{n \le x} f(n) \log \frac{x}{n}$ is

$$\le \frac{\log x}{x} \sum_{n \le x} |f(n)| \left(1 - \frac{\log n}{\log x}\right)^2 \le \frac{\log x}{x} \sum_{n \le x} \left(1 - \frac{\log n}{\log x}\right)^2 \ll \frac{1}{\log x};$$

that is

$$\frac{1}{x} \sum_{n \le x} f(n) \log \frac{x}{n} = \frac{1}{u} \int_0^u s(u-t)\chi(t)dt + O\left(\frac{1}{\log x}\right) \tag{1.5.2}$$

Combining this with exercise 1.2.15(ii) we deduce that

$$s(u) = \frac{1}{u} \int_0^u s(u-t)\chi(t)dt + O\left(\frac{1}{\log x} \exp\left(\sum_{p \le x} \frac{|1 - f(p)|}{p}\right)\right). \tag{1.5.3}$$

The integral $\int_0^u g(u-t)h(t)dt$ is known as the *(integral) convolution* of g and h, and is denoted by $(g * h)(u)$.

In the particular case that $f(p^k) = 1$ for all $p \le y$ we have $S(x) = [x]$ for $x \le y$, and so $s(t) = 1 + o(y^{-t})$ for $0 \le t \le 1$. Moreover (1.5.3) becomes

$$s(u) = \frac{1}{u} \int_0^u s(u-t)\chi(t)dt + O\left(\frac{u}{\log y}\right). \tag{1.5.4}$$

This suggests that if we define a continuous function σ with $\sigma(t) = 1$ for $0 \le t \le 1$ and then

$$\sigma(u) = \frac{1}{u} \int_0^u \sigma(u-t)\chi(t)dt \quad \text{for all } u \ge 1, \tag{1.5.5}$$

then we must have, for $x = y^u$

$$\frac{1}{x} \sum_{m \le x} f(m) = \sigma(u) + O\left(\frac{\log u}{\log y}\right). \tag{1.5.6}$$

We will deduce this, later, once we have proved the prime number theorem (which is relevant since it implies that $\chi(t) = 1 + o(1)$ for $0 < t \le 1$, and $|\chi(t)| \le 1 + o(1)$ for all $t > 0$) but, for now, we observe that a result like (1.5.6) shows that the mean value of every multiplicative function which only varies on the large primes, can be determined in terms of an integral delay equation like (1.5.5). This is quite different from the mean value of multiplicative functions that only vary on the small primes, which can be determined by the Euler product $\mathcal{P}(f;x)$.

1.5.3. A first Structure Theorem

We have seen that the mean value of a multiplicative function which only varies on its small primes is determined by an Euler product, whereas the the mean value of a multiplicative function which only varies on its large primes is determined by an integral delay equation. What about multiplicative functions which vary on both? In the next result we show how the mean value of a multiplicative function can be determined as the product of the mean values of the multiplicative functions given by its value on the small primes, and by its value on the large primes.

Structure1

Theorem 1.5.1. *Let f be a multiplicative function with $|f(n)| \leq 1$ for all n. For any given y, we can write $1 * f = g * h$ where g only varies (from 1) on the primes $> y$, and h only varies on the primes $\leq y$:*

$$g(p^k) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } p \leq y \\ f(p^k) & \text{if } p > y \end{cases} \quad \text{and} \quad h(p^k) = \begin{cases} f(p^k) & \text{if } p \leq y \\ 1 & \text{if } p > y. \end{cases}$$

Then, for $x = y^u$ we have

1stStructure

$$\frac{1}{x}\sum_{n\leq x} f(n) = \frac{1}{x}\sum_{n\leq x} g(n) \cdot \frac{1}{x}\sum_{n\leq x} h(n) + O\Big(\frac{1}{u}\ \exp\Big(\sum_{p\leq x}\frac{|1-f(p)|}{p}\Big)\Big). \tag{1.5.7}$$

If u is sufficiently large (as determined by the size of $\sum_{p\leq x}\frac{|1-f(p)|}{p}$) then the error term here is $o(1)$, and hence

StructAsymp

$$\frac{1}{x}\sum_{n\leq x} f(n) = \frac{1}{x}\sum_{n\leq x} g(n) \cdot \frac{1}{x}\sum_{n\leq x} h(n) + o(1). \tag{1.5.8}$$

In Theorem ?? we will prove that (1.5.8) holds whenever $u \to \infty$. This is "best possible" as will be discussed in Chapter ??.

Proof. Let $H = \mu * h$ so that $h = 1 * H$ and $f = g * H$. Therefore

$$\frac{1}{x}\sum_{n\leq x} f(n) = \frac{1}{x}\sum_{ab\leq x} H(a)g(b) = \sum_{a\leq x}\frac{H(a)}{a}\frac{1}{x/a}\sum_{b\leq x/a} g(b).$$

By Proposition 1.2.4 this is

$$\sum_{a\leq x}\frac{H(a)}{a}\cdot\frac{1}{x}\sum_{b\leq x} g(b) + O\Big(\sum_{a\leq x}\frac{|H(a)|}{a}\frac{\log(2a)}{\log x}\ \exp\Big(\sum_{p\leq x}\frac{|1-g(p)|}{p}\Big)\Big).$$

We may extend both sums over a, to be over *all* integers $a \geq 1$ since the error term is trivially bigger than the main term when $a > x$. Now

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{a\geq 1}\frac{|H(a)|}{a}\log a &= \sum_{a\geq 1}\frac{|H(a)|}{a}\sum_{p^k\|a} k\log p \\ &\leq 2\sum_{\substack{p\leq y\\ k\geq 1}}\frac{k\log p}{p^k}\sum_{A\geq 1}\frac{|H(A)|}{A} \ll \log y\cdot\exp\Big(\sum_{p\leq}\frac{|H(p)|}{p}\Big),\end{aligned}$$

writing $a = p^k A$ with $(A, p) = 1$ and then extending the sum to all A, since $|H(p^k)| \leq 2$. Now

$$\sum_{p \leq x} \frac{|1 - g(p)| + |H(p)|}{p} = \sum_{p \leq x} \frac{|1 - f(p)|}{p},$$

and so the error term above is acceptable. Finally we note that

$$\sum_{a \leq x} \frac{H(a)}{a} = \frac{1}{x} \sum_{n \leq x} h(n) + O\Big(u^{-u/3+o(u)} + x^{-1/6+o(1)}\Big)$$

by applying Proposition GenFundLem 1.4.7, and the result follows. $\square$

1.5.4. An upper bound on averages

For any multiplicative function f with $|f(n)| \leq 1$ for all n we have $|\chi(t)| \ll 1$ for all $t > 0$. We can then take absolute values in (s-Identity 1.5.3) to obtain the upper bound

$$|s(u)| \ll \frac{1}{u} \int_0^u |s(t)| dt + \frac{1}{\log x} \exp\Big(\sum_{p \leq x} \frac{|1 - f(p)|}{p}\Big).$$

In this section we will improve this upper bound using the Brun-Titchmarsh Theorem to

propHal1 (1.5.9)
$$|s(u)| \ll \frac{1}{u} \int_0^u |s(t)| dt + \frac{1}{\log x}.$$

If we could assume the prime number theorem then we could obtain this result with "$\ll$" replaced by "$\leq$".

Proof of (propHal1 1.5.9). Now, for $z = y + y^{1/2} + y^2/x$, using the Brun-Titchmarsh theorem,

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{y < p \leq z} \log p \, \Big|S\Big(\frac{x}{p}\Big)\Big| &\leq \sum_{y < p \leq z} \log p \max_{y \leq u \leq z} \Big|S\Big(\frac{x}{u}\Big)\Big| \ll (z - y) \max_{y \leq u \leq z} \Big|S\Big(\frac{x}{u}\Big)\Big| \\ &\leq \int_y^z \Big|S\Big(\frac{x}{t}\Big)\Big| dt + (z - y) \max_{y \leq t, u \leq z} \Big|S\Big(\frac{x}{t}\Big) - S\Big(\frac{x}{u}\Big)\Big|,\end{aligned}$$

and if $y \leq t, u \leq z$ then

$$\Big|S\Big(\frac{x}{t}\Big) - S\Big(\frac{x}{u}\Big)\Big| \leq \Big|\frac{x}{y} - \frac{x}{z}\Big| = x \cdot \frac{z - y}{y^2}.$$

Summing over such intervals between y and $2y$ we obtain

$$\sum_{y < p \leq 2y} \log p \, \Big|S\Big(\frac{x}{p}\Big)\Big| \ll \int_y^{2y} \Big|S\Big(\frac{x}{t}\Big)\Big| dt + \frac{x}{y^{1/2}} + y.$$

We sum this over each dyadic interval between 1 and x. By (HildIdentity 1.5.1) this implies that

$$\begin{aligned}|S(x)| \log x &\leq \sum_{p \leq x} \log p \, \Big|S\Big(\frac{x}{p}\Big)\Big| + O(x) \\ &\ll \int_1^x \Big|S\Big(\frac{x}{t}\Big)\Big| dt + x = x \int_1^x \frac{|S(w)|}{w^2} dw + x.\end{aligned}$$

Taking $w = x^t$ and dividing through by $x \log x$, yields (propHal1 1.5.9). $\square$

By partial summation, we have

$$\sum_{n\le x}\frac{f(n)}{n}=\frac{1}{x}\sum_{n\le x}f(n)+\int_1^x\sum_{n\le w}f(n)\frac{dw}{w^2}=\frac{S(x)}{x}+\int_1^x\frac{S(w)}{w^2}dw$$
$$=s(u)+\log y\int_0^u s(t)dt.$$

Using (1.5.9), and that $s(t)\ge 1/2$ for $0\le t\le 1/2\log y$, we deduce the same upper bound for the logarithmic mean of f that we had for the mean of f (in (1.5.9)):

propHal1log
$$\frac{1}{\log x}\Big|\sum_{n\le x}\frac{f(n)}{n}\Big|\le\frac{1}{u}\int_0^u|s(t)|dt\left(1+O\left(\frac{1}{\log x}\right)\right). \tag{1.5.10}$$

IterateAverages

1.5.5. Iterating identities

In this section we develop further identities, involving multi-convolutions of multiplicative functions, which turn out to be useful. We have already seen that $f(n)\log n=\sum_{ar=n}\Lambda_f(a)f(r)$, so iterating this twice yields

$$f(n)\log n-\Lambda_f(n)=\sum_{\substack{ar=n\\ r>1}}\frac{\Lambda_f(a)}{\log r}f(r)\log r=\sum_{\substack{ar=n\\ r>1}}\frac{\Lambda_f(a)}{\log r}\sum_{bm=r}\Lambda_f(b)f(m).$$

The $\log r$ in the denominator is difficult to deal with but can be replaced using the identity $\frac{1}{\log r}=\int_0^\infty r^{-\alpha}d\alpha$, and so

$$f(n)\log n-\Lambda_f(n)=\int_0^\infty\sum_{abm=n}\Lambda_f(a)\frac{\Lambda_f(b)}{b^\alpha}\frac{f(m)}{m^\alpha}d\alpha$$

(the condition $r>1$ disappears because $\Lambda_f(1)=0$). If we now sum the left hand side over all $n\le x$ then we change the condition on the sum on the right-hand side to $abm\le x$.

There are several variations possible on this basic identity. If we iterate (1.5.1) then we have $\log(x/p)$ in the denominator. We remove this, as above, to obtain

$$S(x)\log x=\int_0^\infty\sum_{pq\le x}(f(p)p^\alpha\log p)(f(q)\log q)x^{-\alpha}S\left(\frac{x}{pq}\right)d\alpha+O(x\log\log x),$$

though some effort is needed to deal with the error terms. One useful variant is to restrict the primes p and q to the ranges $Q\le p\le x/Q,\ q>Q$ at the cost an extra $O(x\log Q)$ in the error term.

1.5.6. Exercises

ex:ConvolutionId

Exercise 1.5.1. Prove that

$$\frac{1}{u}\int_0^u s(u-t)\chi(t)dt=\frac{\log y}{u}\int_0^u s(t)(2t-u)y^t dt$$

Exercise 1.5.2. Define $\chi^*(u):=\frac{1}{\psi(y^u)}\sum_{m\le y^u}\Lambda_f(m)$, so that if $|\Lambda_f(m)|\le\kappa\Lambda(m)$ for all m then $|\chi^*(u)|\le\kappa$. Prove that if $\kappa=1$ and $\psi(x)=x+O(x/(\log x)^2)$ then $\int_0^u s(u-t)\chi^*(t)dt=\int_0^u s(u-t)\chi(t)dt+O(1/\log y)$.

Exercise 1.5.3. Convince yourself that the functional equation for estimating smooth numbers, that we gave earlier, is a special case of (1.5.3).

Exercise 1.5.4. Improve (1.5.9) to $|s(u)| \leq \frac{1}{u}\int_0^u |s(t)|dt + o(1)$ assuming the prime number theorem. Moreover improve the error term to $O(\frac{\log\log x}{\log x})$ assuming that $\theta(x) = x + O(\frac{x}{(\log x)^2})$.

Part 2

Mean values of multiplicative functions

We introduce the main results in the theory of mean values of multiplicative functions. We begin with results as we look at the mean up to x, as $x \to \infty$. Then we introduce and prove Halász's Theorem, which allows us to obtain results that are uniform in x. The subtle proof of Halász's Theorem requires a chapter of its own.

CHAPTER 2.1

Distances. The Theorems of Delange, Wirsing and Halász

In Chapter 1.2 we considered the heuristic that the mean value of a multiplicative function f might be approximated by the Euler product $\mathcal{P}(f;x)$ (see (1.2.2) and (1.2.3)). We proved some elementary results towards this heuristic and were most successful when f was "close to 1" (see §1.2.3) or when f was non-negative (see §1.2.4). Even for nice non-negative functions the heuristic is not entirely accurate, as revealed by the example of smooth numbers discussed in Chapter ??. We now continue our study of this heuristic, and focus on whether the mean value can be bounded above by something like $|\mathcal{P}(f;x)|$. We begin by making precise the geometric language, already employed in §1.2.3, of one multiplicative function being "close" to another.

2.1.1. The distance between two multiplicative functions

The notion of a distance between multiplicative functions makes most sense in the context of functions whose values are restricted to the unit disc $\mathbb{U} = \{|z| \leq 1\}$. In thinking of the distance between two such multiplicative functions f and g, naturally we may focus on the difference between $f(p^k)$ and $g(p^k)$ on prime powers. An obvious candidate for quantifying this distance is

$$\sum_{p^k \leq x} \frac{|f(p^k) - g(p^k)|}{p^k},$$

as it is used in Propositions 1.2.1, 1.2.4, 1.2.5 and 1.2.6. However, it turns out that a better notion of distance involves $1 - \mathrm{Re}(f(p^k)\overline{g(p^k)})$ in place of $|f(p^k) - g(p^k)|$.

lem4.1 Lemma 2.1.1. *Suppose we have a sequence of functions $\eta_j : U \times U \to \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$ satisfying the triangle inequality*

$$\eta_j(z_1, z_3) \leq \eta_j(z_1, z_2) + \eta_j(z_2, z_3),$$

for all $z_1,\ z_2,\ z_3 \in U$. Then we may define a metric $U^{\mathbb{N}} = \{\mathbf{z} = (z_1, z_2, \ldots) :$ each $z_j \in U\}$ by setting

$$d(\mathbf{z}, \mathbf{w}) = \Big(\sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \eta_j(z_j, w_j)^2 \Big)^{\frac{1}{2}},$$

assuming that the sum converges. This metric satisfies the triangle inequality

$$d(\mathbf{z}, \mathbf{w}) \leq d(\mathbf{z}, \mathbf{y}) + d(\mathbf{y}, \mathbf{w}).$$

PROOF. Expanding out we have

$$d(\mathbf{z},\mathbf{w})^2 = \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \eta_j(z_j,w_j)^2 \le \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (\eta_j(z_j,y_j)+\eta_j(y_j,w_j))^2$$

by the assumed triangle inequality for η_j. Now, using Cauchy-Schwarz, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{j=1}^{\infty}(\eta_j(z_j,y_j)+\eta_j(y_j,w_j))^2 &= d(\mathbf{z},\mathbf{y})^2 + d(\mathbf{y},\mathbf{w})^2 + 2\sum_{j=1}^{\infty}\eta_j(z_j,y_j)\eta_j(y_j,w_j)\\ &\le d(\mathbf{z},\mathbf{y})^2 + d(\mathbf{y},\mathbf{w})^2 + 2\Big(\sum_{j=1}^{\infty}\eta_j(z_j,y_j,)^2\Big)^{\frac12}\Big(\sum_{j=1}^{\infty}\eta_j(y_j,w_j)^2\Big)^{\frac12}\\ &= (d(\mathbf{z},\mathbf{y})+d(\mathbf{y},\mathbf{w}))^2,\end{aligned}$$

which proves the triangle inequality. □

A nice class of examples is provided by taking $\eta_j(z) = a_j(1-\text{Re }(z_j))$ for non-negative a_j, with $U = \mathbb{U}$. We now check that this satisfies the hypothesis of Lemma lem4.1 2.1.1.

lem4.0 LEMMA 2.1.2. *Define $\eta : \mathbb{U}\times\mathbb{U} \to \mathbb{R}_{\ge 0}$ by $\eta(z,w)^2 = 1-\text{Re}(z\overline{w})$. Then for any w, y, z in $\mathbb{U}$ we have*

$$\eta(w,y) \le \eta(w,z)+\eta(z,y).$$

PROOF. (Terry Tao) Any point u on the unit disk is the midpoint of the line between two points u_1, u_2 on the unit *circle*, and thus their average (that is $u = \frac12(u_1+u_2)$).[1] Therefore

$$\begin{aligned}\frac18\sum_{i,j=1}^{2}|t_i-u_j|^2 &= \frac14\sum_{i,j=1}^{2}(1-\text{Re}(t_i\overline{u_j}))\\ &= 1-\text{Re}\left(\frac12\sum_{i=1}^{2}t_i\cdot\frac12\sum_{j=1}^{2}\overline{u_j}\right) = \text{Re}(1-t\overline{u}) = \eta(t,u)^2.\end{aligned}$$

Define the four dimensional vectors $v(w,z) := (w_1-z_1, w_1-z_2, w_2-z_2, w_2-z_1)$ and $v(z,y) := (z_1-y_1, z_2-y_2, z_2-y_1, z_1-y_2)$, with $v(w,y) := v(w,z)+v(z,y)$, so that $\eta(t,u) = \frac{1}{\sqrt8}|v(t,u)|$ where t,u is any pair from w,y,z. Using the usual triangle inequality, we deduce that

$$\eta(w,y) = \frac{1}{\sqrt8}|v(w,y)| \le \frac{1}{\sqrt8}(|v(w,z)|+|v(z,y)|) = \eta(w,z)+\eta(z,y).$$

□

PROOF. (Oleksiy Klurman) Define $\Delta(u) = \sqrt{1-|u|^2}$, so that $2\eta(u,v)^2 = \Delta(u)^2+\Delta(u)^2+|u-v|^2$. The result follows from applying the triangle inequality to the vector addition

$$(w-z,\Delta(w),\Delta(z),0) \ + \ (z-y,0,-\Delta(z),\Delta(y)) \ = \ (w-y,\Delta(w),0,\Delta(y)).$$

□

[1] To see this, draw the line L from the origin to u and then the line perpendicular to L, going through u. This meets the unit circle at u_1 and u_2. If u was on the unit circle to begin with then $u_1 = u_2 = u$.

We can use the above remarks to define distances between multiplicative functions taking values in the unit disc. If we let $a_j = 1/p$ for each prime $p \le x$ then we may define the distance (up to x) between the multiplicative functions f and g by

$$\mathbb{D}(f,g;x)^2 = \sum_{p \le x} \frac{1 - \text{Re } f(p)\overline{g(p)}}{p}.$$

By Lemma 2.1.1 this satisfies the triangle inequality

triangle1

$$\mathbb{D}(f,g;x) + \mathbb{D}(g,h;x) \ge \mathbb{D}(f,h;x). \qquad (2.1.1)$$

EXERCISE 2.1.1. (i) Determine when $\mathbb{D}(f,g;x) = 0$.
(ii) Determine when $\mathbb{D}(f,g;x) + \mathbb{D}(g,h;x) = \mathbb{D}(f,h;x)$.

EXERCISE 2.1.2. It is natural to multiply multiplicative functions together, and to ask if f_1 and g_1 are close to each other, and f_2 and g_2 are close to each other, is $f_1 f_2$ is close to $g_1 g_2$? Indeed prove this variant of the triangle inequality:

triangle2

$$\mathbb{D}(f_1,g_1;x) + \mathbb{D}(f_2,g_2;x) \ge \mathbb{D}(f_1 f_2, g_1 g_2;x). \qquad (2.1.2)$$

There are several different distances that one may take. There are advantages and disadvantages to including the prime powers in the definition of $\mathbb{D}$ (see, e.g exercise ??),

$$\mathbb{D}^*(f,g;x)^2 = \sum_{p^k \le x} \frac{1 - \text{Re } f(p^k)\overline{g(p^k)}}{p^k};$$

but either way the difference between two such notions of distance is bounded by a constant. Another alternative is to define a distance $\mathbb{D}_\alpha$, defined by taking the coefficients $a_j = 1/p^\alpha$ and $z_j = f(p)$, as p runs over all primes for any fixed $\alpha > 1$, which satisfies the analogies to (2.1.1) and (2.1.2).

ex:MertensIneq

EXERCISE 2.1.3. Combine the last two variants of distance to form $\mathbb{D}^*_\alpha$. Use the triangle inequality (and exponentiate) to deduce *Mertens inequality*: For all $\sigma > 1$ and all $t \in \mathbb{R}$,

$$\zeta(\sigma)^3 |\zeta(\sigma + it)|^4 |\zeta(\sigma + 2it)| \ge 1;$$

as well as $\zeta(\sigma)^3 |\zeta(\sigma + 2it)| \ge |\zeta(\sigma + it)|^4$.

lem4.3

EXERCISE 2.1.4. Prove that if each $|a_p| \le 2$ and $\alpha = 1 + 1/\log x$ then

$$\sum_{p \le x} \frac{a_p}{p} = \sum_{p \text{ prime}} \frac{a_p}{p^\alpha} + O(1) .$$

(Hint: Consider the primes $p \le x$, and those $> x$, separately.) Deduce that for any multiplicative functions f and g taking values in the unit disc we have

$$\mathbb{D}(f,g;x)^2 = \sum_{p \text{ prime}} \frac{1 - \text{Re } f(p)\overline{g(p)}}{p^\alpha} + O(1)$$

EXERCISE 2.1.5. Suppose that f is a multiplicative function taking values in the unit disc and $\text{Re}(s) > 1$. Recall that $F(s) := \sum_{n \ge 1} f(n)/n^s$. Prove that

$$\log F(s) = \sum_{p \text{ prime}} \frac{\Lambda_f(n)/\log n}{n^s} = \sum_{p \text{ prime}} \frac{f(p)}{p^s} + O(1).$$

Deduce from this and the previous exercise that

TruncRight

$$\left|F\left(1+\frac{1}{\log x}+it\right)\right| \asymp \log x \ \exp\Big(-\mathbb{D}(f(n),n^{it};x)^2\Big). \tag{2.1.3}$$

2.1.2. Delange's Theorem

We are interested in when the mean value of f up to x is close to its "expected" value of $\mathcal{P}(f;x)$, or even $\mathcal{P}(f)$. Proposition 1.2.1 implies (as in exercise 1.2.9) that if f is a multiplicative function taking values in the unit disc $\mathbb{U}$ and $\sum_p |1-f(p)|/p < \infty$ then $\sum_{n\le x} f(n) \sim x\mathcal{P}(f)$ as $x\to\infty$. Delange's theorem, which follows, is therefore a refinement of Proposition 1.2.1.

Delange

Theorem 2.1.3. **(Delange's theorem)** *Let f be a multiplicative function taking values in the unit disc $\mathbb{U}$. Suppose that*

$$\mathbb{D}(1,f;\infty)^2 = \sum_p \frac{1-\text{Re } f(p)}{p} < \infty.$$

Then

$$\sum_{n\le x} f(n) \sim x\mathcal{P}(f;x) \quad \text{as } x\to\infty.$$

We shall prove Delange's Theorem in the next chapter. Delange's Theorem is not exactly what we asked for in the discussion above, so the question now is whether $\lim_{x\to\infty}\mathcal{P}(f;x)$ exists and equals $\mathcal{P}(f)$. It is straightforward to deduce the following:

DelangeCor

Corollary 2.1.4. *Let f be a multiplicative function taking values in the unit disc $\mathbb{U}$. Suppose that*

$$\lim_{x\to\infty}\sum_{p\le x}\frac{1-f(p)}{p} \quad \text{converges (to a finite value).}$$

Then

$$\sum_{n\le x} f(n) \sim x\mathcal{P}(f) \quad \text{as } x\to\infty.$$

We postpone the proof of Delange's theorem to the next chapter.

2.1.3. A key example: the multiplicative function $f(n)=n^{i\alpha}$

Delange's theorem gives a satisfactory answer in the case of multiplicative functions at a bounded distance from 1, and we are left to ponder what happens when $\mathbb{D}(1,f;x)\to\infty$ as $x\to\infty$. One would be tempted to think that in this case $\frac{1}{x}\sum_{n\le x} f(n)\to 0$ as $x\to\infty$ were it not for the following important counter example. Let $\alpha\neq 0$ be a fixed real number and consider the completely multiplicative function $f(n)=n^{i\alpha}$. By partial summation we find that

eq:4.1

$$\sum_{n\le x} n^{i\alpha} = \int_{0^+}^{x^+} y^{i\alpha} d[y] \sim \frac{x^{1+i\alpha}}{1+i\alpha}. \tag{2.1.4}$$

The mean-value at x then is $\sim x^{i\alpha}/(1+i\alpha)$ which has magnitude $1/|1+i\alpha|$ but whose argument varies with x. In this example it seems plausible enough that $\mathbb{D}(1,p^{i\alpha};x)\to\infty$ as $x\to\infty$ and we now supply a proof of this important fact. We begin with a useful Lemma on the Riemann zeta function.

lem4.3.0

LEMMA 2.1.5. *If $s = \sigma + it$ with $\sigma > 0$ then*

$$\left|\zeta(s) - \frac{s}{s-1}\right| \le \frac{|s|}{\sigma} .$$

If $\sigma > 1$ and $|s-1| \gg 1$ then

$$|\zeta(s)| \ll \log(2 + |s|).$$

PROOF. The first assertion follows easily from Exercise 1.1.2. To prove the second assertion, we deduce from Exercise 1.1.6 that, for any integer $N \ge 1$, we have

$$\zeta(s) = \sum_{n=1}^{N} \frac{1}{n^s} + \frac{N^{1-s}}{s-1} - s\int_N^\infty \frac{\{y\}}{y^{s+1}}dy.$$

Choose $N = [|s|] + 1$, and bound the sum over n trivially to deduce the stated bound for $|\zeta(s)|$. □

Zetaprimebound

EXERCISE 2.1.6. Use similar ideas to prove that if $s = \sigma + it$ with $\sigma > 1$ and $|s-1| \gg 1$ then $|\zeta'(s)| \ll \log^2(2 + |s|)$.

lem4.3.1

LEMMA 2.1.6. *Let α be any real number. Then for all $x \ge 3$ we have*

$$\mathbb{D}(1, p^{i\alpha}; x)^2 = \log(1 + |\alpha| \log x) + O(1),$$

in the case $|\alpha| \le 100$. When $|\alpha| \ge 1/100$ we have

DLowerTBig

$$\mathbb{D}(1, p^{i\alpha}; x)^2 \ge \log\log x - \log\log(2 + |\alpha|) + O(1), \tag{2.1.5}$$
$$\textit{and}\ \ \mathbb{D}(1, p^{i\alpha}; x)^2 \le \log\log x + 8\log\log(2 + |\alpha|) + O(1)$$

PROOF. We take $f(n) = 1$ in (2.1.3). The first two estimates follow directly from the bounds of Lemma 2.1.5, and are equivalent to

EquivUpperBounds

$$\sum_{p \le x} \frac{\operatorname{Re}(p^{i\alpha})}{p} \begin{cases} = \log(1/|\alpha|) + O(1), & \text{if } 1/\log x \le |\alpha| \le 100; \\ \le \log\log(2 + |\alpha|) + O(1), & \text{if } |\alpha| \ge 1/100. \end{cases} \tag{2.1.6}$$

The first estimate yields the third estimate for $1/100 \le |\alpha| \le 100$ so henceforth we assume $|\alpha| > 100$. Our goal is to prove that $|\sum_{y \le p \le x} 1/p^{1+i\alpha}| \ll 1$ whenever $x \ge y := \exp((\log|\alpha|)^8)$, since then

$$-\sum_{p \le x} \frac{\operatorname{Re}(p^{i\alpha})}{p} + O(1) \le \sum_{p \le y} \frac{1}{p} + O(1) \le 8\log\log|\alpha| + O(1),$$

which implies the third estimate. To establish this we write

$$\begin{aligned}\Big|\sum_{y<p\le x} \frac{1}{p^{1+i\alpha}}\Big| &= \Big|\log\Big\{\zeta\Big(1 + \frac{1}{\log x} + i\alpha\Big)\Big\} - \log\Big\{\zeta\Big(1 + \frac{1}{\log y} + i\alpha\Big)\Big\}\Big| + O(1) \\ &= \Big|\int_y^x \frac{-\zeta'}{\zeta}\Big(1 + \frac{1}{\log u} + i\alpha\Big)\frac{du}{u\log^2 u}\Big| + O(1).\end{aligned}$$

Exercise 2.1.6 provides the upper bound $|\zeta'(1+\frac{1}{\log u}+i\alpha)| \ll \log^2|\alpha|$, so we need a upper bound on $1/|\zeta(1+\frac{1}{\log u}+i\alpha)|$: By (2.1.3),

$$\begin{aligned}\log 1\Big/\Big|\zeta\Big(1+\frac{1}{\log u}+i\alpha\Big)\Big| &= -\sum_{p\le u}\frac{\cos(\alpha\log p)}{p}+O(1)\\ &\le \Big(\sum_{p\le u}\frac{1}{p}\Big)^{1/2}\Big(\sum_{p\le u}\frac{\cos^2(\alpha\log p)}{p}\Big)^{1/2}+O(1)\\ &\le \Big(\log\log u\Big)^{1/2}\Big(\frac{1}{2}\sum_{p\le u}\frac{1+\cos(2\alpha\log p)}{p}\Big)^{1/2}+O(1)\\ &\le \frac{3}{4}\log\log u+O(1),\end{aligned}$$

by the second estimate of (2.1.6). Inserting these estimates in above yields

$$\Big|\sum_{y<p\le x}\frac{1}{p^{1+i\alpha}}\Big| \ll 1+\int_y^x \frac{(\log|\alpha|)^2(\log u)^{3/4}}{u\log^2 u}du \ll 1,$$

and the result follows $\square$

One important consequence of Lemma 2.1.6 and the triangle inequality is that a multiplicative function cannot pretend to be like two different problem examples, $n^{i\alpha}$ and $n^{i\beta}$.

`cor:repulsive` COROLLARY 2.1.7. *Let α and β be two real numbers and let f be a multiplicative function taking values in the unit disc. If $\delta=|\alpha-\beta|$ then*

$$\Big(\mathbb{D}(f,p^{i\alpha};x)+\mathbb{D}(f,p^{i\beta};x)\Big)^2 \ge \begin{cases}\log(1+\delta\log x)+O(1), & \text{if } \delta\le 1/10;\\ \log\log x-\log\log(2+\delta)+O(1), & \text{if } \delta\ge 1/10.\end{cases}$$

PROOF. Indeed the triangle inequality gives that $\mathbb{D}(f,p^{i\alpha};x)+\mathbb{D}(f,p^{i\beta};x)\ge \mathbb{D}(p^{i\alpha},p^{i\beta};x)=\mathbb{D}(1,p^{i(\alpha-\beta)};x)$ and we may now invoke Lemma 2.1.6. $\square$

An useful consequence of Lemma 2.1.6 when working with Dirichlet characters (see Chapter **??** for the definition) is the following:

`cor:ftothekbound` COROLLARY 2.1.8. *Suppose that there exists an integer $k\ge 1$ such that $f(p)^k=1$ for all primes p. For any fixed non-zero real α we have*

$$\mathbb{D}(f(p),p^{i\alpha};x)^2 \ge \frac{1}{k^2}\log\log x+O_{k,\alpha}(1).$$

Examples of this include $f=\mu$ the Möbius function, or indeed any $f(n)$ which only takes values -1 and 1, as well as $f=\chi$ a Dirichlet character (though one needs to modify the result to deal with the finitely many primes p for which $\chi(p)=0$), and even $f=\mu\chi$.

PROOF OF COROLLARY 2.1.8. By the triangle inequality, we have $k\mathbb{D}(f(p),p^{i\alpha};x)\ge \mathbb{D}(1,p^{ik\alpha};x)$ and the result then follows immediately from Lemma 2.1.6. $\square$

The problem example $n^{i\alpha}$ discussed above takes on complex values, and one might wonder if there is a real valued multiplicative function f taking values in $[-1,1]$ for which $\mathbb{D}(1,f;x)\to\infty$ as $x\to\infty$ but for which the mean value does not tend to zero. A lovely theorem of Wirsing shows that this does not happen.

`Wirsing` THEOREM 2.1.9 (Wirsing's Theorem). *Let f be a real valued multiplicative function with $|f(n)| \leq 1$ and $\mathbb{D}(1, f; x) \to \infty$ as $x \to \infty$. Then as $x \to \infty$*

$$\frac{1}{x} \sum_{n \leq x} f(n) \to 0.$$

Wirsing's theorem applied to $\mu(n)$ immediately yields the prime number theorem (using Theorem 1.1.1). We shall not directly prove Wirsing's theorem, but instead deduce it as a consequence of the important theorem of Halász, which we discuss in the next section (see Corollary 2.3.5 for a quantitative version of Theorem 2.1.9).

2.1.4. Halász's theorem; the qualitative version

We saw in the previous section that the function $f(n) = n^{i\alpha}$ has a large mean value even though $\mathbb{D}(1, f; x) \to \infty$ as $x \to \infty$. We may tweak such a function at a small number of primes and expect a similar result to hold. More precisely, one can ask if an analogy to Delange's result holds: that is if f is multiplicative with $\mathbb{D}(f(p), p^{i\alpha}; \infty) < \infty$ for some α, can we understand the behavior of $\sum_{n \leq x} f(n)$? This is the content of the qualitative version of Halász's theorem.

`Hal1` THEOREM 2.1.10. **(Qualitative Halász theorem)** *Let f be a multiplicative function with $|f(n)| \leq 1$ for all integers n.*
(i) *Suppose that there exists $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$ for which $\mathbb{D}(f, p^{i\alpha}; \infty) < \infty$. Write $f(n) = g(n)n^{i\alpha}$. Then, as $x \to \infty$,*

$$\sum_{n \leq x} f(n) = \frac{x^{1+i\alpha}}{1+i\alpha}\ \mathcal{P}(g; x) + o(x).$$

(ii) *Suppose that $\mathbb{D}(f, p^{i\alpha}; \infty) = \infty$ for all $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$. Then, as $x \to \infty$,*

$$\frac{1}{x} \sum_{n \leq x} f(n) \to 0.$$

`ex:fLimit` EXERCISE 2.1.7. Deduce that if f is a multiplicative function with $|f(n)| \leq 1$ for all integers n then $\frac{1}{x} \sum_{n \leq x} f(n) \to 0$ if and only if *either*

(i) $\mathbb{D}(f, p^{i\alpha}; \infty) = \infty$ for all $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$; *or*
(ii) $\mathbb{D}(f, p^{i\alpha}; \infty) < \infty$ for some $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$ and $f(2^k) = -(2^k)^{i\alpha}$ for all $k \geq 1$.

Establish that (ii) cannot happen if $|\Lambda_f(4)| \leq \Lambda(4)$.

`ex:SlowVary` EXERCISE 2.1.8. If f is a multiplicative function with $|f(n)| \leq 1$ show that $\mathcal{P}(f; y)$ is slowly varying, that is $\mathcal{P}(f; y) = \mathcal{P}(f; x) + O(\log(ex/y)/\log x)$ if $y \leq x$.

PROOF OF THEOREM 2.1.10(I). We will deduce (i) from Delange's Theorem 2.2.1 and exercise 2.1.8. By partial summation we have

$$\sum_{n \leq x} f(n) = \int_1^x t^{i\alpha} d\Big(\sum_{n \leq t} g(n)\Big) = x^{i\alpha} \sum_{n \leq x} g(n) - i\alpha \int_1^x t^{i\alpha - 1} \sum_{n \leq t} g(n) dt.$$

Now $\mathbb{D}(1, g; \infty) = \mathbb{D}(f, p^{i\alpha}; \infty) < \infty$ and so by Delange's theorem, if t is sufficiently large then

$$\sum_{n \leq t} g(n) = t\mathcal{P}(g; t) + o(t).$$

Substituting this into the equation above, and then applying exercise 2.1.8, we obtain

$$\sum_{n\le x} f(n) = x^{1+i\alpha}\mathcal{P}(g;x) - i\alpha\int_1^x t^{i\alpha}\mathcal{P}(g;x)dt + o(x) = \frac{x^{1+i\alpha}}{1+i\alpha}\ \mathcal{P}(g;x) + o(x).$$

□

We will deduce Part (ii) of Theorem 2.1.10 from the quantitative version of Halasz's Theorem, which we will state only in section 7.

Applying Theorem 2.1.10(i) with f replaced by $f(n)/n^{i\alpha}$ we obtain the following:

cor:Compare

Corollary 2.1.11. *Let f be multiplicative function with $|f(n)|\le 1$ and suppose there exists $\alpha\in\mathbb{R}$ such that $\mathbb{D}(f,p^{i\alpha};\infty)<\infty$. Then as $x\to\infty$*

$$\frac{1}{x}\sum_{n\le x} f(n) = \frac{x^{i\alpha}}{1+i\alpha}\cdot\frac{1}{x}\sum_{n\le x}\frac{f(n)}{n^{i\alpha}} + o(1).$$

This will be improved considerably in Theorem ??. Taking absolute values in both parts of Theorem 2.1.10 we deduce:

LimAbsVal

Corollary 2.1.12. *If f is multiplicative with $|f(n)|\le 1$ then*

$$\lim_{x\to\infty}\frac{1}{x}\left|\sum_{n\le x} f(n)\right| \quad \text{exists.}$$

2.1.5. A better comparison theorem

The following quantitative result, relating the mean value of $f(n)$ to the mean-value of $f(n)n^{it}$ for any t, improves the error term in Corollary 2.1.11 to (better than) $O(x/(\log x)^{1+o(1)})$, and provides an alternative proof of Theorem 2.1.10, assuming Delange's Theorem.

AsympT1

Lemma 2.1.13. *Suppose $f(n)$ is a multiplicative function with $|f(n)|\le 1$ for all n. Then for any real number t with $|t|\le x^{1/3}$ we have*

$$\sum_{n\le x} f(n) = \frac{x^{it}}{1+it}\sum_{n\le x}\frac{f(n)}{n^{it}} + O\left(\frac{x}{\log x}\log(2+|t|)\exp\left(\mathbb{D}(f(n),n^{it};x)\sqrt{2\log\log x}\right)\right).$$

ex:mtotheit

Exercise 2.1.9. Prove that if $|t|\ll m$ and $|\delta|\le 1/2$ then $2m^{it} = (m-\delta)^{it} + (m+\delta)^{it} + O(|t|^2/m^2)$. Deduce that

$$\sum_{m\le z} m^{it} = \begin{cases}\frac{z^{1+it}}{1+it} + O(1+t^2)\\ O(z).\end{cases}$$

Proof of Lemma 2.1.13. Let g and h denote the multiplicative functions defined by $g(n)=f(n)/n^{it}$, and $g=1*h$, so that $h=\mu*g$. Then

$$\sum_{n\le x} f(n) = \sum_{n\le x} g(n)n^{it} = \sum_{n\le x} n^{it}\sum_{d|n} h(d) = \sum_{d\le x} h(d)d^{it}\sum_{m\le x/d} m^{it}.$$

We use the first estimate in exercise 2.1.9 when $d \leq x/(1+t^2)$, and the second estimate when $x/(1+t^2) \leq d \leq x$. This gives

$$\sum_{n\leq x} f(n) = \frac{x^{1+it}}{1+it}\sum_{d\leq x}\frac{h(d)}{d} + O\bigg((1+t^2)\sum_{d\leq x/(1+t^2)}|h(d)| + x\sum_{x/(1+t^2)\leq d\leq x}\frac{|h(d)|}{d}\bigg).$$

Applying Proposition 1.2.2 and partial summation, we deduce that

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{n\leq x} f(n) &= \frac{x^{1+it}}{1+it}\sum_{d\leq x}\frac{h(d)}{d} + O\bigg(\frac{x}{\log x}\log(2+|t|)\sum_{d\leq x}\frac{|h(d)|}{d}\bigg)\\ &= \frac{x^{1+it}}{1+it}\sum_{d\leq x}\frac{h(d)}{d} + O\bigg(\frac{x}{\log x}\log(2+|t|)\exp\bigg(\sum_{p\leq x}\frac{|1-g(p)|}{p}\bigg)\bigg).\end{aligned}$$

We use this estimate twice, once as it is, and then with $f(n)$ replaced by $f(n)/n^{it}$, and t replaced by 0, so that g and h are the same in both cases.

By the Cauchy-Schwarz inequality,

$$\bigg(\sum_{p\leq x}\frac{|1-g(p)|}{p}\bigg)^2 \leq 2\sum_{p\leq x}\frac{1}{p}\cdot\sum_{p\leq x}\frac{1-\mathrm{Re}(g(p))}{p} \leq 2\mathbb{D}(g(n),1;x)^2(\log\log x + O(1)),$$

and the result follows, since $\mathbb{D}(f(n),n^{it};x)^2 = \mathbb{D}(g(n),1;x)^2 \ll \log\log x$. □

DistI

2.1.6. Distribution of values of a multiplicative function, I

Given a complex-valued multiplicative function f, Jordan Ellenberg asked whether the arguments of the $f(n)$ are uniformly distributed on $[0,2\pi)$. One observes that the size of the $f(n)$ is irrelevant so we may assume that each $|f(n)| = 0$ or 1. Moreover if a positive proportion of $f(n) = 0$ then the values cannot be uniformly distributed, so we may as well assume that every $|f(n)| = 1$.

One might guess that a random, complex-valued multiplicative f is indeed uniformly distributed in angle, but not true for all f. There are some obvious examples for which this does not occur, for example if each $f(n)$ is real (and thus 1 or -1), or each $f(n)$ is a mth root of unity for some fixed $k \geq 1$. Another class of examples is given by $f(n) = n^{it}$ for some $t \in \mathbb{R}$ (since n^{it} all point roughly in the same direction for $N \leq n \leq Ne^{\pi/8t}$). Moreover one can multiply these, so that $f(n) = g(n)n^{it}$ where each $g(n)^m = 1$. Our main result states that if $f(n)$ is not uniformly distributed then f must be close to one of these examples.

For any $0 \leq \alpha < \beta < 1$ define

$$R_f(N,\alpha,\beta) := \frac{1}{N}\ \#\left\{n \leq N:\ \frac{1}{2\pi}\arg(f(n)) \in (\alpha,\beta]\right\} - (\beta-\alpha).$$

We say that the $f(n)$ are *uniformly distributed* on the unit circle if $R_f(N,\alpha,\beta) \to 0$ for all $0 \leq \alpha < \beta < 1$.

equidist

THEOREM 2.1.14. *Let f be a multiplicative function with each $|f(n)| = 1$, for which $|\Lambda_f(4)| \leq \log 2$. Either*

(i) *The $f(n)$ are uniformly distributed on the unit circle; or*

(ii) *There exists an integer $m \geq 1$, a multiplicative function $g(.)$ with each $g(n)$ an mth root of unity, and a $t \in \mathbb{R}$ such that $\mathbb{D}(f(p), g(p)p^{it}; \infty) \ll 1$.*

This leads to the rather surprising (immediate) consequence:

equidistit

COROLLARY 2.1.15. *Let f be a completely multiplicative function with each $f(p)$ is on the unit circle. The $f(n)$ are uniformly distributed on the unit circle if and only if the $f(n)/n^{i\gamma}$ are uniformly distributed on the unit circle for every $\gamma \in \mathbb{R}$.*

To prove our distribution theorem we use

Weyl's equidistribution theorem *Let $\{\xi_n : \ n \geq 1\}$ be any sequence of points on the unit circle. The set $\{\xi_n : \ n \geq 1\}$ is uniformly distributed on the unit circle if and only if $\lim_{N\to\infty} \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n\leq N} \xi_n^m$ exists and equals 0, for each non-zero integer m.*

PROOF OF THEOREM 2.1.14. By Weyl's equidistribution theorem the $f(n)$ are uniformly distributed on the unit circle if and only if $\lim_{N\to\infty} \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n\leq N} f(n)^m$ exists and equals 0, for each non-zero integer m. By Halász's theorem (Theorem 2.1.10 and exercise 2.1.7) this fails if and only if there exists $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$ for which $\mathbb{D}(f(p)^m, p^{i\alpha}; \infty) \ll 1$ for some $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$. By taking conjugates, if necessary, we may assume that $m \geq 1$. Let $t = \alpha/m$ and $g(p)$ be the mth root of unity nearest to $f(p)/p^{it}$, so that $|\arg(f(p)\overline{g(p)}/p^{it})| \leq \pi/m$. Now if $|\theta| \leq \pi/m$ then $1 - \cos\theta \leq 1 - \cos(m\theta)$ and so $\mathbb{D}(f(p), g(p)p^{it}; \infty) \leq \mathbb{D}(f(p)^m, p^{i\alpha}; \infty) \ll 1$, since $(g(p)p^{it})^m = p^{i\alpha}$. $\square$

If a_n is a sequence with each $|a_n| = 1$. We say that $\{a_n : \ n \geq 1\}$ is *uniformly distributed on the mth roots of unity* if, for each mth root of unity ξ, we have $\#\{n \leq x : \ a_n = \xi\} \sim x/m$.

THEOREM 2.1.14 (continued): *If m is minimal in case (ii), then $g(.)$ is uniformly distributed on the mth roots of unity.*

PROOF. We claim that $\lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{1}{x} \sum_{n\leq x} g(n)^k = 0$ for all $1 \leq k \leq m-1$. If this is false for some k then, by Halasz's Theorem, we know that $\mathbb{D}(g(p)^k, p^{i\beta}; \infty) \ll 1$ for some $\beta \in \mathbb{R}$. Hence, by the triangle inequality,

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbb{D}(f(p)^k, p^{i(\beta+kt)}; \infty) &\leq \mathbb{D}(f(p)^k, g(p)^k p^{ikt}; \infty) + \mathbb{D}(g(p)^k p^{ikt}, p^{i(\beta+kt)}; \infty) \\ &\leq k\ \mathbb{D}(f(p), g(p)p^{it}; \infty) + \mathbb{D}(g(p)^k, p^{i\beta}; \infty) \ll 1,\end{aligned}$$

which implies that $\lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{1}{x} \sum_{n\leq x} f(n)^k \neq 0$ by exercise 2.1.7, a contradiction. The result can then be deduced from the following exercise. $\square$

EXERCISE 2.1.10. Suppose that each $g(n)$ is a mth root of unity. Prove that $g(.)$ is uniformly distributed on the mth roots of unity if and only if $\frac{1}{x} \sum_{n\leq x} g(n)^k \to 0$ as $x \to \infty$ for $1 \leq k \leq m-1$.

2.1.7. Additional exercises

EXERCISE 2.1.11. Prove that $\eta(z, w) := |1 - z\overline{w}|$ also satisfies the triangle inequality inside $\mathbb{U}$; i.e. $|1 - z\overline{w}| \leq |1 - z\overline{y}| + |1 - y\overline{w}|$ for $w, y, z \in \mathbb{U}$. Prove that we get equality if and only if $z = y$, or $w = y$, or $|w| = |z| = 1$ and y is on the line segment connecting z and w. (Hint: $|1-z\overline{w}| \leq |1-z\overline{y}| + |z\overline{y} - z\overline{w}| \leq |1-z\overline{y}| + |y-w| \leq |1-z\overline{y}| + |1-y\overline{w}|$.)

This last notion comes up in many arguments and so it is useful to compare the two quantities:

Exercise 2.1.12. By showing that $\frac{1}{2}|1-z|^2 \leq 1 - \mathrm{Re}(z) \leq |1-z|$ whenever $|z| \leq 1$, deduce that

$$\frac{1}{2}\sum_{p\leq x} \frac{|1-f(p)\overline{g(p)}|^2}{p} \leq \mathbb{D}(f,g;x)^2 \leq \sum_{p\leq x} \frac{|1-f(p)\overline{g(p)}|}{p} .$$

We define $\mathbb{D}(f,g;\infty) := \lim_{x\to\infty} \mathbb{D}(f,g;x)$. In the next exercise we relate distance to the product $\mathcal{P}(f;x)$, which is the heuristic mean value of f up to x:

ex:PasD Exercise 2.1.13. Suppose that f is a multiplicative function for which $|\Lambda_f(n)| \leq \Lambda(n)$ for all n.

(i) Prove that $\lim_{x\to\infty} \mathbb{D}(f,g;x)$ exists.
(ii) Show that $\log|\mathcal{P}(f;x)| = -\mathbb{D}(1,f;x)^2 + O(1)$.
(iii) Deduce that $\lim_{x\to\infty} |\mathcal{P}(f;x)|$ exists if and only if $\mathbb{D}(1,f;\infty) < \infty$.
(iv) Show that $|\mathcal{P}(f;x)| \leq 1$ and $|\mathcal{P}(f;x)| = 1 + O(\mathbb{D}^*(1,f;x)^2)$.

ex:divergence Exercise 2.1.14. Come up with an example of f, with $|f(n)| = 1$ for all n, for which $\mathbb{D}(1,f;\infty)$ converges but $\sum_p (1-f(p))/p$ diverges. Deduce that $\mathcal{P}(f;x)$ does not tend to a limit as $x \to \infty$.

ex:4.4.1 Exercise 2.1.15. If f is a multiplicative function with $|f(n)| \leq 1$ show that there is at most one real number α with $\mathbb{D}(f, p^{i\alpha};\infty) < \infty$.

ex:Wirsing Exercise 2.1.16. Deduce Wirsing's Theorem (Theorem Wirsing 2.1.9) from Theorem Hal1 2.1.10(ii). (Hint: You might use the Brun-Titchmarsh Theorem.)

ex:f(n)f(n+1)2 Exercise 2.1.17. Suppose that f is a multiplicative function with $-1 \leq f(n) \leq 1$ for each integer n. Assume that $\frac{1}{x}\sum_{n\leq x} f(n) \not\to 0$.

(i) Prove that $\lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{1}{x}\sum_{n\leq x} f(n)$ exists and is > 0, and that

$$\lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{1}{x}\sum_{n\leq x} f(n)f(n+1) = \mathcal{P}(f,f).$$

(Hint: Use exercise ex:f(n)f(n+1) 1.2.16 and Wirsing's Theorem.)
(ii) Prove that this is > 0 unless $\mathcal{P}_2(f) \leq \frac{1}{2}$ or $\mathcal{P}_3(f) \leq \frac{1}{2}$.
(iii) Prove that if $f(n)$ only takes on values 1 and -1, then $\mathcal{P}(f,f) \neq 0$.

ex:f(n)f(n+1)3 Exercise 2.1.18. Suppose that f is a multiplicative function with $-1 \leq f(n) \leq 1$ for each integer n.

(i) If $f(2^k)f(2)^k \geq 0$ for all integers $k \geq 1$, prove that, for all integers $n \geq 1$,

$$f(n)f(n+1) + f(2n)f(2n+1) + f(2n+1)f(2n+2) \geq -1.$$

(ii) Deduce that $\sum_{n\leq x} f(n)f(n+1) \geq -\frac{1}{3}x + O(\log x)$.
(iii) More generally show that

$$\frac{1}{x}\sum_{n\leq x} f(n)f(n+1) \geq \frac{f(2)}{3}\sum_{k\geq 1} \frac{f(2^k)f(2^{k+1})}{2^k} - \frac{2}{3} + o(1).$$

(iv) Prove that if the lower bound in (iii) is $-1+o(1)$ then $|\Lambda_f(2^k)| = (2^k - 1)\log 2$.

(v) Prove that if $|\Lambda_f(2^k)| \leq \log 2$ for all $k \geq 1$ then

CHAPTER 2.2

Additive functions

We define $h(n)$ to be an *additive function* if

$$h(mn) = h(m) + h(n) \quad \text{whenever} \quad (m,n) = 1.$$

A famous example is $\omega(n) = \sum_{p|n} 1$, the number of distinct prime factors of n. Since $h(n)$ is an additive function if and only if $z^{h(n)}$ is a multiplicative function (for any fixed $z \neq 0$), the studies of additive and multiplicative functions are entwined. The goal of this chapter is to prove Delange's Theorem, which we do using a relatively easy result about the "usual" size of an additive function, which will also imply a famous a result of Hardy and Ramanujan on the number of prime factors of a typical integer. We will also indicate how one can deduce the Erdős-Kac theorem on the distribution of $\omega(n)$. Later, in chapter 11, we will see how the much more precise Selberg-Delange theorem, using deeper methods of multiplicative functions, allows one to estimate the number of integers with a given number of prime factors.

2.2.1. Delange's Theorem

We dedicate this chapter to the surprising proof of Delange's theorem:

Delange

THEOREM 2.2.1 (Delange). *Let f be a multiplicative function taking values in the unit disc $\mathbb{U}$ for which $\mathbb{D}(1,f;\infty) < \infty$. Then*

$$\sum_{n \le x} f(n) \sim x\mathcal{P}(f;x) \quad \textit{as } x \to \infty.$$

We shall deduce Delange's Theorem from the following result about multiplicative functions that have small difference:

CloseMultFns

PROPOSITION 2.2.2. *Let f and g be multiplicative functions with each $f(n), g(n) \in \mathbb{U}$. Then*

$$\sum_{n \le x} f(n)g(n) = .\mathcal{P}(f;x)\sum_{n \le x} g(n) + O\left(x\mathbb{D}^*(f,1;\infty) + \frac{x}{\log x}\right).$$

We deduce Delange's Theorem when $\mathbb{D}^*(f,1;\infty) = o(1)$ by taking $g = 1$. Note that $\mathbb{D}^*(f,g;\infty) < \mathbb{D}(f,g;\infty) + O(1) < \infty$.

DEDUCTION OF THEOREM Delange 2.2.1. We decompose f as $g\ell$ where

$$g(p^k) = \begin{cases} f(p^k) & \text{if } p^k \le y; \\ 1 & \text{if } p^k > y \end{cases} \quad \text{and} \quad \ell(p^k) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } p^k \le y \\ f(p^k) & \text{if } p^k > y \end{cases},$$

so that $\mathbb{D}^*(1,f;\infty) = \mathbb{D}^*(1,g;\infty) + \mathbb{D}^*(1,\ell;\infty)$ and $\mathbb{D}^*(1,g;\infty) = \mathbb{D}^*(1,f;y)$. Fix $\epsilon > 0$ and then y sufficiently large so that $\mathbb{D}^*(1,\ell,\infty) = \mathbb{D}^*(1,f;\infty) - \mathbb{D}^*(1,f;y) < \epsilon$.

By Proposition 2.2.2 with $f = \ell$ we have

$$\sum_{n\le x} f(n) = \mathcal{P}(\ell;x)\sum_{n\le x} g(n) + O(\epsilon x).$$

as $\mathbb{D}^*(f,g;\infty) = \mathbb{D}^*(g\ell,g;\infty) \le \mathbb{D}^*(\ell,1;\infty) < \epsilon$. Now, by Proposition 1.4.7 with $x \ge y^u$ where $1/u^{u/3} < \epsilon$, we have

$$\sum_{n\le x} g(n) = \mathcal{P}(g;x)x + O(\epsilon x),$$

The result follows since $\mathcal{P}(\ell;x)\mathcal{P}(g;x) = \mathcal{P}(f;x)$, letting $\epsilon \to 0$. $\square$

2.2.2. Additive Functions

To prove Proposition 2.2.2 we define an additive function $h(.)$ with $h(p^k) = f(p^k) - 1$ for all prime powers p^k. We have $f(p^k) \approx e^{h(p^k)}$ if $|1 - f(p^k)|$ is small, which it usually is. Hence $f(n) \approx e^{h(n)}$. The key to the proof of Proposition 2.2.2 is that additive functions h are mostly very close to their mean value μ_h; hence $f(n) \approx e^{\mu_h}$ for most integers n, and the result then follows since $e^{\mu_h} \approx \mathcal{P}(f;x)$. In this section we fill in the details of this surprising argument.

Exercise 2.2.1. Suppose that $h(.)$ is an additive function with each $|h(p^k)| \ll 1$. Prove that

$$\frac{1}{x}\sum_{n\le x} h(n) = \mu_h + O\left(\frac{1}{\log x}\right) \text{ where } \mu_h := \sum_{p^k\le x} \frac{h(p^k)}{p^k}\left(1 - \frac{1}{p}\right).$$

The Turán-Kubilius inequality shows that the values of $h(n)$ tend to be very close to the mean value of $h(n)$. It accomplishes this by bounding the variance:

PropDel Proposition 2.2.3 (Turán-Kubilius). *If $h(.)$ is an additive function then*

$$\sum_{n\le x} |h(n) - \mu_h|^2 \ll x \sum_{p^k\le x} \frac{|h(p^k)|^2}{p^k}.$$

The "best-possible" implicit constant in this result is $3/2 + o(1)$.

To apply this result we need to make a few simple, technical remarks.

prodnums Exercise 2.2.2. (i) For any complex numbers $w_1, \ldots, w_k$ and $z_1, \ldots, z_k$ in the unit disc we have

$$|z_1\cdots z_k - w_1\cdots w_k| \le \sum_{j=1}^{j} |z_j - w_j|.$$

(ii) Deduce that if f and g are multiplicative functions, taking values in $\mathbb{U}$, then

$$\left|\frac{1}{x}\sum_{n\le x} f(n) - \frac{1}{x}\sum_{n\le x} g(n)\right| \le \sum_{p^k\le x} \frac{|f(p^k) - g(p^k)|}{p^k}.$$

Since $|z_1 - z_2|^2 \le 2(1 - \mathrm{Re}(z_1\overline{z_2}))$ whenever $|z_1|, |z_2| \le 1$, we have

usefulIneq
$$\sum_{p^k\le x} \frac{|f(p^k) - g(p^k)|^2}{p^k} \le 2\sum_{p^k\le x} \frac{1 - \mathrm{Re}(f(p^k)\overline{g(p^k)})}{p^k} = 2\,\mathbb{D}^*(f,g;x)^2 \tag{2.2.1}$$

expapprox Exercise 2.2.3. Show that if $|z| \le 1$ then $|e^{z-1}| \le 1$ and $z = e^{z-1} + O(|z-1|^2)$.

We now proceed to the surprising proof of Delange.

Deduction of Proposition 2.2.2. Using the last two exercises (the latter with $z = f(p^k)$) we obtain

$$f(n) = \prod_{p^k \| n} f(p^k) = \prod_{p^k \| n} e^{f(p^k)-1} + O\left(\sum_{p^k \| n} |f(p^k) - 1|^2 \right).$$

Let $h(.)$ be the additive function defined by $h(p^k) = f(p^k) - 1$. Therefore, since each $|g(n)| \leq 1$,

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{n \leq x} g(n) f(n) - \sum_{n \leq x} g(n) e^{h(n)} &\ll \sum_{n \leq x} \sum_{p^k \| n} |f(p^k) - 1|^2 \\ &\leq x \sum_{p^k \leq x} \frac{|f(p^k) - 1|^2}{p^k} \ll x \, \mathbb{D}^*(f, 1, x)^2. \end{aligned}$$

Now since $\mathrm{Re}(h(n)) \leq 0$ for all n, therefore $\mathrm{Re}(\mu_h) \leq 0$ and $|e^{h(n)} - e^{\mu_h}| \ll |h(n) - \mu_h|$. Hence

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \sum_{n \leq x} g(n) e^{h(n)} - e^{\mu_h} \sum_{n \leq x} g(n) \right| &\leq \sum_{n \leq x} |e^{h(n)} - e^{\mu_h}| \ll \sum_{n \leq x} |h(n) - \mu_h| \\ &\ll \left(x \sum_{n \leq x} |h(n) - \mu_h|^2 \right)^{1/2} \ll x \, \mathbb{D}^*(f, 1, x) + \frac{x}{\log x}. \end{aligned}$$

by the Cauchy-Schwarz inequality, and Proposition 2.2.3.

Now $\mu_h = \sum_{p \leq x} \mu_{h,p}$ where $\mu_{h,p} := \sum_{k:\ p^k \leq x} \frac{h(p^k)}{p^k} \left(1 - \frac{1}{p}\right)$, so that

$$e^{\mu_{h,p}} = 1 + \mu_{h,p} + O(\mu_{h,p}^2) = \left(1 - \frac{1}{p}\right) \sum_{k \geq 0} \frac{f(p^k)}{p^k} + O\left(\frac{1}{x} + \frac{1}{p} \sum_{k \geq 1:\ p^k \leq x} \frac{|h(p^k)|^2}{p^k} \right),$$

which is the pth factor from $\mathcal{P}(f, x)$, using the Cauchy-Schwarz inequality. We deduce from exercise 2.2.2 that

$$|e^{\mu_h} - \mathcal{P}(f, x)| \ll \sum_{p^k \leq x} \left(\frac{|f(p^k) - 1|^2}{p^k} + \frac{1}{x} \right) \ll \mathbb{D}^*(f, 1, x)^2 + \frac{1}{\log x}.$$

The result follows by collecting up the displayed equations above. □

2.2.3. The Turán-Kubilius inequality and the number of prime factors of typical integer

Proof of Proposition 2.2.3, the Turán-Kubilius inequality. We begin by proving the result assuming that $h(p^i) = 0$ for all prime powers $p^i > \sqrt{x}$. If we expand the left hand side then the coefficient of $h(p^i)\overline{h(q^j)}$, where p and q are distinct primes, is

$$\sum_{\substack{n \leq x \\ p^i, q^j \| n}} 1 - \frac{1}{q^j} \left(1 - \frac{1}{q}\right) \sum_{\substack{n \leq x \\ p^i \| n}} 1 - \frac{1}{p^i} \left(1 - \frac{1}{p}\right) \sum_{\substack{n \leq x \\ q^j \| n}} 1 + \frac{1}{p^i q^j} \left(1 - \frac{1}{p}\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{q}\right) \sum_{n \leq x} 1.$$

The first sum here is

$$\sum_{\substack{n\le x\\ p^i,q^j\|n}} 1=\left[\frac{x}{p^iq^j}\right]-\left[\frac{x}{p^{i+1}q^j}\right]-\left[\frac{x}{p^iq^{j+1}}\right]+\left[\frac{x}{p^{i+1}q^{j+1}}\right]$$
$$=\frac{x}{p^iq^j}\left(1-\frac{1}{p}\right)\left(1-\frac{1}{q}\right)+O(1).$$

Treating all three other sums analogously, we find that the coefficient of $h(p^i)\overline{h(q^j)}$ is $O(1)$. Summing over i and j we get the bound (and Cauchying)

$$\ll \sum_{p^i\le\sqrt{x}}|h(p^i)|^2\le \sum_{p^i\le\sqrt{x}}p^i\sum_{p^i\le x}\frac{|h(p^i)|^2}{p^i}\ll\frac{x}{\log x}\sum_{p^i\le x}\frac{|h(p^i)|^2}{p^i}$$

The quantity that remains equals

$$\sum_{n\le x}\sum_{p\le\sqrt{x}}\left|h(p^{v_p(n)})-\sum_{k:\ p^k\le x}\frac{h(p^k)}{p^k}\left(1-\frac{1}{p}\right)\right|^2$$
$$\ll\sum_{n\le x}\sum_{p\le\sqrt{x}}|h(p^{v_p(n)})|^2+x\sum_{\substack{k:\ p^k\le x\\ p\le\sqrt{x}}}\frac{|h(p^k)|^2}{p^k}\ll x\sum_{p^k\le x}\frac{|h(p^k)|^2}{p^k}$$

using the Cauchy-Schwarz inequality, since $p^k\|n$ for $\le x/p^k$ integers $n\le x$.

Next we prove the result assuming that $h(p^i)=0$ for all prime powers $p^i\le\sqrt{x}$. If $n\le x$ and $h(n)\ne 0$ then there is at most one prime power p^i with $p^i\|n$ and $h(p^i)\ne 0$. For each such p^i there are $\le x/p^i$ such values of n. Therefore, the sum on the left hand side above is

$$\le x|\mu_h|^2+\sum_{\sqrt{x}<p^i\le x}|h(p^i)-\mu_h|^2\frac{x}{p^i}\le x|\mu_h|^2+x\sum_{p^i\le x}\frac{|h(p^i)|^2}{p^i}\ll x\sum_{p^k\le x}\frac{|h(p^k)|^2}{p^k}.$$

by the Cauchy-Schwarz inequality.

Finally, we can write any given h as h_1+h_2 with $h_1(p)=0$ for all primes $p>\sqrt{x}$, and $h_2(p)=0$ for all primes $p\le\sqrt{x}$. Then $\mu_h=\mu_{h_1}+\mu_{h_2}$ by definition, and so $|h(n)-\mu_h|\le|h_1(n)-\mu_{h_1}|+|h_2(n)-\mu_{h_2}|$ by the triangle inequality. Using Cauchy-Schwarz we then bound the required sum for h by the analogous sums for h_1 and h_2, and our result follows. $\square$

Let $\omega(n)=\sum_{p|n}1$ be the number of distinct prime factors of an integer, and let $\Omega(n)=\sum_{p^k|n}1$ be the number of prime factors of an integer, including multiplicities. Thus $\omega(12)=2$ while $\Omega(12)=3$. Both are additive functions, and we can apply Proposition 2.2.3 to both.

Corollary 2.2.4 (Hardy and Ramanujan). *For all, but at most $o(x)$, integers $\le x$ we have*

$$\omega(n),\Omega(n)=\log\log n+O((\log\log n)^{1/2+\epsilon}).$$

Proof. Now $\mu_\omega:=\sum_{p\le x}1/p=\log\log x+c+o(1)$ by exercise 1.1.10. If $\mathcal{N}$ is the set of integers $n>x/\log x$ for which $|\omega(n)-\log\log n|\ge 2(\log\log n)^{1/2+\epsilon}$

then $|\omega(n)-\mu_\omega| \geq (\log\log x)^{1/2+\epsilon}$. Hence, applying Proposition PropDel 2.2.3 with $h(p^k) = \omega(p^k) = 1$, we deduce that

$$\#\mathcal{N}\cdot(\log\log x)^{1+2\epsilon} \leq \sum_{n\leq x} |\omega(n)-\mu_\omega|^2 \ll x\log\log x.$$

Hence $\#\mathcal{N} \ll x/(\log\log x)^{2\epsilon}$ and the result for $\omega(n)$ follows. Let $\mathcal{M}$ be the set of integers $n\in\mathcal{N}$ for which $\Omega(n)-\omega(n) \geq 2(\log\log n)^{1/2+\epsilon}$. Then

$$\begin{aligned}\#\mathcal{M}\cdot(\log\log x)^{1/2+\epsilon} &\leq \sum_{n\leq x}(\Omega(n)-\omega(n)) = \sum_{n\leq x}\sum_{\substack{p^k|n\\ k\geq 2}} 1\\ &= \sum_{\substack{p^k\leq x\\ k\geq 2}}\sum_{\substack{n\leq x\\ p^k|n}} 1 \leq \sum_{\substack{p^k\leq x\\ k\geq 2}}\frac{x}{p^k} \leq \sum_{p\leq x}\frac{x}{p(p-1)} \leq x.\end{aligned}$$

Hence $\#\mathcal{M} \ll x/(\log\log x)^{1/2+\epsilon}$, and the result for $\Omega(n)$ follows. □

2.2.4. The Central-Limit Theorem and the Erdős-Kac theorem

The *Central-Limit Theorem* tells us that if $X_1, X_2, \ldots$ is a sequence of independent random variables then, under mild restrictions, the random variable given by the sum

$$S_N := X_1 + X_2 + \ldots + X_N$$

satisfies the *normal distribution*; that is, there exists *mean* μ and *variance* σ^2 such that, for any real number T,

$$\text{Prob}(S_N \geq \mu + T\sigma) \to \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_T^\infty e^{-\frac{1}{2}t^2}dt,$$

as $N\to\infty$. This is also called the *Gaussian distribution*, and in his handwritten notes in the Göttingen library, one can find Gauss observing that the distribution of primes in short intervals appears to satisfy such a distribution.

In order to prove that the given probability distributions S_N converge to the normal distribution, it suffices to verify that all of the integer moments give the correct values. That is

$$\mathbb{E}(S_N-\mu)^m/\sigma^m \to \begin{cases}\frac{2k!}{2^k\cdot k!} & \text{if } m=2k \text{ is even;}\\ 0 & \text{if } m \text{ is odd,}\end{cases}$$

as $N\to\infty$, for each integer $m\geq 0$. These results can all be found in any introductory text in probability theory, such as ProbText [?].

The Erdős-Kac theorem is a significant strengthening of the result of Hardy and Ramanujan. It states that the values $\{\omega(n):\ n\leq x\}$ are distributed as in the normal distribution with mean $\log\log x$ and variance $\log\log x$; specifically that, for any real number T,

$$\frac{1}{x}\#\{n\leq x:\ \omega(n)\geq \log\log x + T\sqrt{\log\log x}\} \to \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_T^\infty e^{-\frac{1}{2}t^2}dt,$$

as $x\to\infty$. To prove this we will compare the moments of $\omega(n)-\log\log x$ with the moments of a corresponding heuristic model, which satisfies the Central-Limit Theorem. Like before we will split our consideration into the small and large prime factors. To study the kth moments, we begin by working with the primes $\leq y$ where $y^k\leq x$.

Define
$$1_p(n) := \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } p|n; \\ 0 & \text{if } p \nmid n \end{cases}$$
and then
$$\omega_y(n) := \sum_{p|n,\ p\le y} 1 \ = \ \sum_{p\le y} 1_p(n).$$
A randomly chosen integer is divisible by p with probability $1/p$, so if we define $X_2, X_3, \dots$ to be independent random variables with
$$X_p := \begin{cases} 1 & \text{with probability } 1/p; \\ 0 & \text{with probability } 1-1/p, \end{cases}$$
then
$$S_y := \sum_{p\le y} X_p$$
gives a model for the values of $\omega_y(n)$. This is, on average,
$$\mu_y := \mathbb{E}(S_y) = \sum_{p\le y} \mathbb{E}(X_p) = \sum_{p\le y} \frac{1}{p},$$
and so we will study
$$\frac{1}{x}\sum_{n\le x}(\omega_y(n)-\mu_y)^k - \mathbb{E}((S_y-\mu_y)^k) = \sum_{j=1}^{k}\binom{k}{j}(-\mu_y)^{k-j}\Big(\frac{1}{x}\sum_{n\le x}\omega_y(n)^j - \mathbb{E}(S_y^j)\Big).$$
We expand this last term as
$$\sum_{p_1,p_2,\dots,p_j\le y}\Big(\frac{1}{x}\sum_{n\le x} 1_{p_1}(n)\dots 1_{p_j}(n) - \mathbb{E}(X_{p_1}\dots X_{p_j})\Big)$$
$$= \sum_{\substack{p_1,p_2,\dots,p_j\le y \\ d:=[p_1,p_2,\dots p_j]}}\Big(\frac{1}{x}\Big[\frac{x}{d}\Big]-\frac{1}{d}\Big) \ll \frac{1}{x}\sum_{p_1,p_2,\dots,p_j\le y} 1 = \frac{\pi(y)^j}{x}.$$
Hence, in total, our upper bound is
$$\ll \sum_{j=1}^{k}\binom{k}{j}\mu_y^{k-j}\frac{\pi(y)^j}{x} \le \frac{(\pi(y)+\mu_y)^k}{x} = o(1).$$
We therefore deduce that
$$\frac{1}{x}\#\{n\le x:\ \omega_y(n)\ge \mu_y + T\sigma_y\} \to \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_T^\infty e^{-\frac{1}{2}t^2}dt,$$
where $\sigma_y^2 := \sum_{p\le y}\frac{1}{p}\Big(1-\frac{1}{p}\Big)$. We let $y = x^{1/L}$ with $L := \log\log x$ so that $\mu_y,\ \sigma_y^2 = \log\log x + O(\log L)$.

Now we show that the large primes rarely make a significant contribution to $\omega(n)$:
$$\frac{1}{x}\sum_{n\le x}|\omega(n)-\omega_y(n)| = \sum_{y<p\le x}\frac{1}{x}\Big[\frac{x}{p}\Big] \sim \log L$$
by exercise exmertens 1.1.10. Hence there are $o(x)$ values of $n\le x$ for which $|\omega(n)-\omega_y(n)| \ge (\log L)^2$. The Erdős-Kac theorem follows.

This argument can be easily generalized:

EXERCISE 2.2.4. Prove that $\Omega(n) := \sum_{p^k|n} 1$ is normally distributed, for the integers $n \le x$, with mean and variance $\sim \log\log x$.

EXERCISE 2.2.5. Let $h(.)$ be an additive function, and define $h_y(p^k) = h(p^k)$ if $p^k \le y$, and $h_y(p^k) = 0$ otherwise. For $y = x^L$ as above, assume that, for each fixed integer $k \ge 1$, we have

$$\sum_{d:\ \omega(d)\le k} |h_y(d)| = o\Big(\frac{x}{((1+s_y\log\log y)^k}\Big)$$

and that

$$\sum_{y<p^k\le x} \frac{|h(p^k)|}{p^k} = o(s_y) \text{ where } s_y^2 := \sum_{p^k\le y} \frac{|h(p^k)|^2}{p^k} \ .$$

Deduce that the values of $h(n)$, with $n \le x$, are normally distributed.

A further generalization that is useful in applications, goes as follows:

EXERCISE 2.2.6. Let A be a set of x integers (possibly repeated). Suppose that there exists a non-negative real-valued multiplicative function $f(.)$ such that the number of elements of A that are divisible by d is $(f(d)/d)x + r_d$. Let $\omega_{\mathcal{P}}(a)$ be the number of distinct prime factors of a from the given set of primes $\mathcal{P}$. Prove that if

$$\sum_{\substack{d:\ p|d \implies p\in\mathcal{P} \\ \omega(d)\le k}} |r_d| = o\Big(\frac{x}{((1+\mu_{\mathcal{P}})^k}\Big)$$

for each fixed integer $k \ge 1$, where $\mu_{\mathcal{P}} := \sum_{p\in\mathcal{P}} f(p)/p$, then the values of $\omega_{\mathcal{P}}(a)$, with $a \in A$, are normally distributed.

CloseMultFns2

EXERCISE 2.2.7. Suppose that f and g are multiplicative functions taking values in $\mathbb{U}$. Let h be a multiplicative function for which $h(p^k) = f(p^k)$ if $|f(p^k)| \le |g(p^k)|$, and $h(p^k) = g(p^k)$ otherwise Then

$$\mathcal{P}(h/f;x)\sum_{n\le x} f(n) - .\mathcal{P}(h/g;x)\sum_{n\le x} g(n) \ll x\mathbb{D}^*(f,g;\infty) + \frac{x}{\log x}.$$

Here $(h/f)(p^k) = h(p^k)/f(p^k)$ unless $f(p^k) = 0$, in which case $(h/f)(p^k) = 1$.

CHAPTER 2.3

Halász's theorem

In this chapter we will state the quantitative form of Halász's theorem; we already saw the qualitative version in Theorem Hal1 2.1.10(ii) (which we deduce from the result given here). This reflects an important change in focus. Up until now the results have been primarily aimed at letting us understand the mean value of f up to x, *as* $x \to \infty$. Halász's theorem allows us to work more explicitly with the mean value of f up to x, *for given large* x.

2.3.1. The main result

The main result of Halász deals with the (difficult) case when $\mathbb{D}(f, p^{i\alpha}; \infty) = \infty$ for all α. It is more precise and quantitative. To state it we do need some further definitions. Given a multiplicative function f with $|f(n)| \le 1$ for all n, define

mindist

$$M(x,T) = M_f(x,T) = \min_{|t|\le T} \mathbb{D}(f, p^{it}; x)^2. \tag{2.3.1}$$

We define $t(x,T) = t_f(x,T)$ to be a value of t with $|t| \le T$ at which this minimum is attained.

Hal2 Theorem 2.3.1. **(Halász's theorem)** *Let f be a multiplicative function with $|f(n)| \le 1$ for all n and let $1 \le T \le (\log x)^{10}$ be a parameter. Then*

$$\frac{1}{x}\Big|\sum_{n\le x} f(n)\Big| \ll (1 + M(x,T))\exp(-M(x,T)) + \frac{1}{T}.$$

The proof will appear in the next chapter. In this chapter we will discuss various consequences of this key theorem. The following exercise helps us establish limitations on the strength of Halász's theorem:

ex:4.13 Exercise 2.3.1. Show that if $T \ge 1$ then

$$\frac{1}{2T}\int_{-T}^{T} \mathbb{D}(f, p^{it}; x)^2 dt = \log\log x + O(1).$$

Deduce that $M_f(x,T) \le \log\log x + O(1)$, and conclude that the bound in Halász's theorem is never better than $x \log\log x / \log x$.

This implies the following:

Hal2Cor Corollary 2.3.2. *Let f be a multiplicative function with $|f(n)| \le 1$ for all n. Then*

$$\frac{1}{x}\Big|\sum_{n\le x} f(n)\Big| \ll (1 + M_f(x,\log x))\exp(-M_f(x,\log x))$$

At first sight it is difficult to know how to interpret the use of the function $M_f(x,T)$ and whether or not it accurately reflects the size of the mean value in many cases. First let us relate it to more familiar quantities:

MaxTruncRight

EXERCISE 2.3.2. Prove that

$$\max_{|t|\le T}\Big|F\Big(1+it+\frac{1}{\log x}\Big)\Big| \asymp \log x\ \exp(-M_f(x,T)).$$

From the result in this exercise, we might expect that the mean value of f up to y is "typically" of size $\exp(-M_f(y,T))$, and indeed we will exhibit this in Theorem 2.6.3. Moreover we will give examples in sections ?? and ?? to show that the extra factor $(1+M_f(x,T))$ is necessary.

When we go to prove Halász's theorem, it is simpler to work only with totally multiplicative f (note that if f is a given multiplicative function, and g is that totally multiplicative function for which $g(p)=f(p)$ for all p then $M_f(x,T)=M_g(x,t)$ by definition). The following two exercises allow the reader to justify that this may be done without loss of generality:

compare2Ms

EXERCISE 2.3.3. If $x\ge y$ show that

$$0\le M_f(x,T)-M_f(y,T)\le 2\sum_{y<p\le x}\frac{1}{p}=2\log\frac{\log x}{\log y}+O(1).$$

Show that this bound cannot be improved in general.

MultnTotallyMult

EXERCISE 2.3.4. By writing $f=g*h$ where g is the totally multiplicative function with $g(p)=f(p)$ for all primes p, show that Halász's Theorem (Theorem 2.3.1) holds for all multiplicative functions f with values inside the unit disk if it does for totally multiplicative functions. (Hint: Note that h is only supported on powerful numbers, and $|h(p^k)|\le 2$ for all k. Use the hyperbola method to bound the mean value of f. You might need to use exercise 2.3.3)[1]

2.3.2. Proof of the prime number theorem

PNTexplicit1

COROLLARY 2.3.3. *[The Prime Number Theorem] There exists a constant A such that*

$$\psi(x)-x\ll x\ \frac{(\log\log x)^A}{\log x}.$$

PROOF. Note that

$$\mathbb{D}(1,n^{i\alpha};x)^2+\mathbb{D}(\mu(n),n^{i\alpha};x)^2=2\sum_{p\le x}\frac{1}{p}=2\log\log x+O(1).$$

Therefore, using Lemma 2.1.6, we deduce that for $T\ge 10$,

$$M_\mu(x,T)\ge \log\log x-8\log\log T+O(1).$$

Hence by Corollary 2.3.2 we have

$$\frac{1}{x}\Big|\sum_{n\le x}\mu(n)\Big|\ll\frac{(\log\log x)^9}{\log x}.$$

We deduce the result with $A=11$, by exercise 1.1.15 (and this value for A can probably be reduced with more effort). ☐

[1] This exercise also appeared in chapter 8; it now only appears here.

We cannot hope, using only these methods, to improve the error term in Corollary 2.3.3 to better than $(\log\log x)/\log x$, as discussed in exercise 2.3.1. However, for many applications, we would like to improve this to $\ll_B x/(\log x)^B$, for any given $B > 0$. Fortunately, Koukoulopoulos [?] recently developed a modification of this approach which allowed him to achieve this goal, indeed proving that

$$\psi(x) = x + O\Big(x \exp\Big(-(\log x)^{3/5+o(1)}\Big)\Big);$$

which is as small an error term as is known from classical methods. We will describe Koukoulpoulos's more sophisticated proof in chapter ??.

The proof of the prime number theorem given in Corollary 2.3.3 depends on the (simple) estimates for $\zeta(s)$ to the right of the 1-line, given in Lemma 2.1.5. One can entirely avoid the use of $\zeta(s)$ and instead use the Brun-Titchmarsh Theorem to obtain the estimates necessary to deduce a slightly weaker version of the prime number theorem:

ex:BTbound1 Exercise 2.3.5. (i) Let $|t| \leq \log x$ and $P = \{|t|^{100} < p \leq x : \ \cos(t\log p) \geq -\frac{1}{2}\}$. Show that the primes in $\{p \leq x\} \setminus P$ belong to a union of intervals. Apply the Brun-Titchmarsh theorem to each such interval to deduce that

$$\sum_{\substack{p\leq x\\ p\notin P}} \frac{1}{p} \leq \Big\{\frac{2}{3} + o(1)\Big\} \log\log x.$$

Deduce from this and the definition of P that $\mathbb{D}^2(\mu(n), n^{it}; x) \geq \Big\{\frac{1}{6}+o(1)\Big\}\log\log x$, and hence $\psi(x) = x + O(x/(\log x)^{\tau+o(1)})$ for $\tau = 1/6$.

(ii) Use partial summation and the Brun-Titchmarsh theorem to show that one can take $\tau = 1 - \frac{2}{\pi}$.

2.3.3. Real valued multiplicative functions: Deducing Wirsing's theorem

Let f be a real multiplicative function with $-1 \leq f(n) \leq 1$ for all n. It seems unlikely that f can pretend to be a complex valued multiplicative function $n^{i\alpha}$. The triangle inequality allows us to make this intuition precise:

realdist Lemma 2.3.4. *Let f be a real multiplicative function with $-1 \leq f(n) \leq 1$ for all n. For any real number $|\alpha| \leq (\log x)^{10}$ we have*

$$\mathbb{D}(f, p^{i\alpha}; x) \geq \frac{1}{3}\ \mathbb{D}(1, f; x) + O(1).$$

Proof. If $\mathbb{D}(1, p^{2i\alpha}; x) \geq \frac{2}{3}\mathbb{D}(1, f; x) + O(1)$ then the triangle inequality gives

$$\frac{2}{3}\mathbb{D}(1,f;x)+O(1) \leq \mathbb{D}(1,p^{2i\alpha};x) = \mathbb{D}(p^{-i\alpha},p^{i\alpha};x) \leq \mathbb{D}(f,p^{i\alpha};x)+\mathbb{D}(f,p^{-i\alpha};x) = 2\mathbb{D}(f,p^{i\alpha};x).$$

Otherwise, since $\mathbb{D}(1, p^{2i\alpha}; x) = \mathbb{D}(1, p^{i\alpha}; x) + O(1)$ by Lemma 2.1.6,

$$\mathbb{D}(f, p^{i\alpha}; x) \geq \mathbb{D}(1, f; x) - \mathbb{D}(1, p^{i\alpha}; x) \geq \frac{1}{3}\mathbb{D}(1, f; x) + O(1).$$

□

Using Lemma 2.3.4 and Halász's theorem with $T = \log x$ we deduce:

Halreal

Corollary 2.3.5. *If f is a multiplicative function with $-1 \le f(n) \le 1$ then*

$$\frac{1}{x}\sum_{n\le x} f(n) \ll (1+\mathbb{D}(1,f;x)^2)\exp\Big(-\frac{1}{9}\ \mathbb{D}(1,f;x)^2\Big).$$

If $f(n) \ge 0$ for all n then, evidently $t_f(x,T)=0$, and so we can replace the constant $\frac{1}{9}$ by 1 in the Corollary. However when $f(n)$ takes negative values things are not so simple:

Exercise 2.3.6. Prove that if $f(n)\ge 0$ for all n then $t_f(x,T)=0$. Show also that if $f(p)=-1$ for all primes p then $t_f(x,T)\ne 0$.

The optimal constant, $0.32867\ldots$[2] in place of $\frac{1}{9}$, has been obtained in Corollary 2.3.5 by Hall and Tenenbaum [?] (see section **).

Corollary 2.3.5 implies a quantitative form of Wirsing's Theorem 2.1.9 and, this in turn, implies a quantitative form of the prime number theorem: Since $\mathbb{D}(1,\mu;x)^2 = 2\log\log x + O(1)$ we deduce that $\psi(x)-x \ll x/(\log x)^{2/9+o(1)}$, though this is weaker than Corollary 2.3.3

2.3.4. Distribution of values of a multiplicative function, II

We develop the discussion from section 2.1.6, now using explicit estimates derived from Halász's theorem.

Exercise 2.3.7. Let m be the smallest positive integer with $\mathbb{D}(f(p)^m, p^{im\alpha};\infty) < \infty$ for some $\alpha\in\mathbb{R}$. Show that if r is any other integer with $\mathbb{D}(f(p)^r, p^{ir\beta};\infty)<\infty$ for some $\beta\in\mathbb{R}$, then m divides r.

If we are in case (ii) of Theorem 2.1.14 then we deduce, from Halász's theorem and the last exercise, that $\sum_{n\le N} f(n)^k = o(N)$ if m does not divide k.

The characteristic function for the interval (α,β) is

$$\beta-\alpha+\sum_{\substack{k\in\mathbb{Z}\\ k\ne 0}} \frac{e(k\alpha)-e(k\beta)}{2i\pi k}\ e(kt).$$

We can take this sum in the range $1\le |k|\le M$ with an error $\le\epsilon$. Hence

$$\begin{aligned} R(N,\alpha,\beta) &= \sum_{1\le|k|\le M} \frac{e(k\alpha)-e(k\beta)}{2i\pi k}\frac{1}{N}\sum_{n\le N} f(n)^k + O(\epsilon)\\ &= \sum_{1\le |r|\le R}\frac{e(mr\alpha)-e(mr\beta)}{2i\pi mr}\ \frac{1}{N}\sum_{n\le N} f(n)^{mr} + O(\epsilon)\end{aligned}$$

writing $k=mr$ and $R=[M/k]$. This formula does not change value when we change $\{\alpha,\beta\}$ to $\{\alpha+\frac{1}{m},\beta+\frac{1}{m}\}$, nor when we change $\{f,\alpha,\beta\}$ to $\frac{1}{m}$ times the formula for $\{f^m, m\alpha, m\beta\}$ and hence we deduce that

$$\begin{aligned} R_f(N,\alpha,\beta) &= \frac{1}{m}R_{f^m}(N,m\alpha,m\beta)+o_{N\to\infty}(1)\\ &= R_f\Big(N,\alpha+\frac{j}{m},\beta+\frac{j}{m}\Big)+o_{N\to\infty}(1),\ \text{for } 1\le j\le m-1,\end{aligned}$$

for all $0\le\alpha<\beta<1$.

[2] More precisely $-\cos\beta$, where β is the unique root in $(0,\pi)$ of $\sin\beta-\beta\cos\beta=\frac{1}{2}\pi$.

sec:BestConsts

2.3.5. Best Constants

It is evident that $t_f(x, \log x) = 0$ if all $f(n) \in [0,1]$, and hence

$$\sum_{n\le x} f(n) \ll x \exp\left(- \sum_{p\le x} \frac{1-f(p)}{p} \right)$$

One might guess that this also holds for all real-valued f, but that is not true.

LEMMA 2.3.6. *Let θ_1 be the solution to $\sin\theta_1 - \theta_1 \cos\theta_1 = \frac{\pi}{2}$, and then $\kappa = -\cos\theta_1 = .32867\ldots$. If each $f(p) \in [-1,1]$ and $|t| = (\log x)^{O(1)}$ then*

$$\sum_{p\le x} \frac{1 - \mathrm{Re}(f(p)/p^{it})}{p} \ge \kappa \sum_{p\le x} \frac{1-f(p)}{p} + O(.).$$

Moreover this is the optimal such constant κ.

EXERCISE 2.3.8. Use the example $f(n) = n^i$ to show that there is no such result for complex-valued f.

PROOF. We wish to maximize λ, such that, for all $f(p)$ with $|f(p)| \le 1$,

$$(1-\lambda)\sum_{p\le x} \frac{1}{p} \ge \sum_{p\le x} f(p) \frac{\cos(t\log p) - \lambda}{p}.$$

To maximize the right side we select $f(p) = \mathrm{sign}(\cos(t\log p) - \lambda)$, so that we need

$$(1-\lambda)\log\log x \ge \sum_{p\le x} \frac{|\cos(t\log p) - \lambda|}{p}.$$

To evaluate this sum when $t = 1$, one needs the prime number theorem. Under this assumption we have

$$\sum_{p\le x} \frac{|\cos(t\log p)-\lambda|}{p} = \begin{cases} \eta \log\log x + O(\log\log(1+|t|)) & \text{if } |t| \ge 1 \\ (1-\lambda)\log(1/|t|) + \eta\log(|t|\log x) + O(1) & \text{if } 1 > |t| \ge 1/\log x \\ (1-\lambda)\log\log x + O(1) & \text{if } |t| \le 1/\log x \end{cases}$$

where

$$\eta := \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} |\cos\theta - \lambda| d\theta = \frac{2}{\pi}(\sin\theta_0 - \lambda\theta_0) + \lambda$$

and $\theta_0 > 0$ is the smallest real number for which $\lambda = \cos\theta_0$. We need $1-\lambda \ge \eta$. The result follows by taking $1 - \lambda = \eta$ and then $\theta_1 = \pi - \theta_0$.

The example $f(p) = \mathrm{sign}(\cos(t\log p) - \kappa)$ shows that the constant cannot be increased. $\square$

CHAPTER 2.4

Perron's formula and its variants

NewHal

Perron's formula is a key ingredient in the proof of Halász's theorem. In this chapter we will discuss how it is used. To do so, we move away from purely elementary techniques, and use standard (complex) analytic techniques that are useful throughout analytic number theory.

In the next chapter we will finally prove Halász's Theorem.

2.4.1. Deriving Perron's formula

Many times now we have seen sums where some parameter n ranges up to x. Perron's formula gives an analytic way of expressing the condition whether n lies below x or not, and this expression paves the way for attacking such sums using analytic properties of the associated Dirichlet series.

Perron

LEMMA 2.4.1. *Let $y > 0$ and $c > 0$ be real numbers. Then*

qualper

$$\frac{1}{2\pi i}\int_{c-i\infty}^{c+i\infty} \frac{y^s}{s} ds = \delta(y > 1) := \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } y > 1 \\ \frac{1}{2} & \text{if } y = 1 \\ 0 & \text{if } y < 1, \end{cases} \tag{2.4.1}$$

where the conditionally convergent integral is to be interpreted as $\lim_{T\to\infty}\int_{c-iT}^{c+iT}$. Quantitatively, for $y \neq 1$,

quanPer

$$\frac{1}{2\pi i}\int_{c-iT}^{c+iT} \frac{y^s}{s} ds = \delta(y > 1) + O\Big(y^c \min\Big(1, \frac{1}{T|\log y|}\Big)\Big). \tag{2.4.2}$$

The formula (2.4.1) may be verified by moving the line of integration to the right when $y < 1$; that is, letting c tend to $+\infty$ and using Cauchy's theorem to justify that the integral does not change. When $y > 1$ the idea is to move the line of integration to the left; that is, to let c tend to $-\infty$ and keeping in mind that we cross a pole at $s = 0$ which gives a residue of 1. This argument can be made precise, but a little care is needed as the integral is not absolutely convergent. The reader should attempt to carry this out, or at any rate carry out the corresponding argument for the variants in the exercise below where the integral is absolutely convergent.

Perronvariants

EXERCISE 2.4.1. Let $y > 0$ and $c > 0$ be real numbers. Show that

pervar

$$\frac{1}{2\pi i}\int_{c-i\infty}^{c+i\infty} \frac{y^s}{s^2} ds = \begin{cases} \log y & \text{if } y \geq 1 \\ 0 & \text{if } y \leq 1. \end{cases} \tag{2.4.3}$$

Now we return to the proof of Perron's formula, Lemma 2.4.1.

Proof. Integration by parts gives (for $y \neq 1$)

$$\int_{c-iT}^{c+iT} \frac{y^s}{s} = \int_{c-iT}^{c+iT} \frac{1}{s} d\Big(\frac{y^s}{\log y}\Big) = \frac{1}{\log y}\Big(\frac{y^{c+iT}}{c+iT} - \frac{y^{c-iT}}{c-iT}\Big) + \frac{1}{\log y}\int_{c-iT}^{c+iT} \frac{y^s}{s^2} ds.$$

Since

$$\int_{c-iT}^{c+iT} \frac{y^s}{s^2} ds = \int_{c-i\infty}^{c+i\infty} \frac{y^s}{s^2} ds + O(y^c/T),$$

using (2.4.3) we conclude that for $y \neq 1$

$$\frac{1}{2\pi i}\int_{c-iT}^{c+iT} \frac{y^s}{s} ds = \delta(y>1) + O\Big(\frac{y^c}{T|\log y|}\Big).$$

This establishes (2.4.2) when $T|\log y| \geq 1$. Now suppose that $T|\log y| \leq 1$. Here

$$\frac{1}{2\pi i}\int_{c-iT}^{c+iT} \frac{y^s}{s} ds = \frac{1}{2\pi i}\int_{c-iT}^{c+iT} \frac{y^c}{s}(1+O(|s|\log y)) ds = O(y^c),$$

and so (2.4.2) holds again. From the quantitative version (2.4.2) the qualitative relation (2.4.1) (for $y \neq 1$) follows upon letting $T \to \infty$, and the case $y = 1$ was checked in Exercise 2.5.2. □

2.4.2. Discussion of Perron's formula

Suppose that a_n are complex numbers with $a_n = n^{o(1)}$, and define the Dirichlet series let $A(s) = \sum_{n\geq 1} a_n n^{-s}$. This is absolutely convergent for $\mathrm{Re}(s) > 1$. If x is not an integer, then Perron's formula gives, for any $c > 1$,

PerF

$$\sum_{n\leq x} a_n = \sum_{n} a_n \frac{1}{2\pi i}\int_{c-i\infty}^{c+i\infty} \Big(\frac{x}{n}\Big)^s \frac{ds}{s} = \frac{1}{2\pi i}\int_{c-i\infty}^{c+i\infty} A(s)\frac{x^s}{s} ds. \tag{2.4.4}$$

We can interchange the sum and integral as everything is absolutely convergent for arbitrary $c > 1$. Note that $|x^s| = x^c$ increases as c increases, while $|F(s)|$ may be expected to increase as c decreases to 1. A convenient value for c that balances these trends is to take $c = 1 + 1/\log x$, and we shall frequently do so below.

Unfortunately it is not easy to bound the integral in (2.4.4) directly. If we use the quantitative form of Perron's formula with $c = 1 + 1/\log x$, and $|a_n| \leq d_\kappa(n)$ for all n then

PerFT

$$\sum_{n\leq x} a_n = \frac{1}{2\pi i}\int_{c-iT}^{c+iT} A(s)\frac{x^s}{s} ds + O\Big(\frac{x(\log x)^\kappa \log T}{T}\Big) \tag{2.4.5}$$

(see exercise 2.5.4 below). Then estimating the integral trivially we would obtain, choosing $T = (\log x)^\kappa$,

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{n\leq x} a_n &\ll x^c\Big(\max_{|t|\leq T} |A(c+it)|\Big)\int_{-T}^{T} \frac{dt}{1+|t|} + \frac{x\log(xT)}{T}\\ &\ll x\Big(\max_{|t|\leq(\log x)^\kappa} |A(1+1/\log x+it)|\Big)\log\log x + \frac{x}{\log x}.\end{aligned}$$

When $\kappa = 1$ this bound is weaker than the trivial $\sum_{n\leq x} a_n \ll x$ since one can show that $\max_{|t|\leq 1} |A(1+1/\log x+it)| \gg 1$.

In the case $a_n = f(n) = 1$, we have $F(s) = \zeta(s)$ and $\sum_{n\leq x} f(n) = x + O(1)$. Now $|\zeta(c+it)|$ is largest when $t = 0$ and here it attains the value $\zeta(c) \approx 1/(c-1) = \log x$. However such a large value is attained only when $|t| \ll 1/\log x$. In estimating the Perron integral trivially, we have used this maximum value over a much larger range and thereby lost a lot. For a general multiplicative function, the large values of $|F(c+it)|$ are also concentrated in small intervals and thus we can hope to gain a factor of $\log x$ in Halász's theorem.

Hence we are hoping for a bound like

$$\sum_{n\leq x} f(n) \ll x \frac{\max_{|t|\leq(\log x)^{\kappa}} |F(c+it)|}{\log x} \cdot \log\log x$$

so the trivial bound on Perron's formula is too big only by a factor of $\log x$. In exercise ex:4.13 2.3.1 we saw that the improved bound given by Halász's Theorem is never better than $x \log\log x/\log x$ (and we will show that this is the "best possible" by the examples in section AsympExampConst ??). I This is what makes Halász's Theorem so difficult to prove: In most analytic arguments, one can freely lose powers of $\log x$, here and there.[1]

Perronsection

2.4.3. Perron's formula

The most famous example comes in taking $f(n) = \Lambda(n)$, to obtain

$$\psi(x) = \sum_{n\leq x} \Lambda(n) = \frac{1}{2i\pi}\int_{c-i\infty}^{c+i\infty} \left(-\frac{\zeta'(s)}{\zeta(s)}\right) \frac{x^s}{s}\ ds.$$

This is the basis Riemann's approach to proving the prime number theorem, the idea being that one shifts the contour to the left, and uses Cauchy's residue theorem to exactly determine the value of $\psi(x)$ in terms of the poles of $\frac{\zeta'(s)}{\zeta(s)}\frac{x^s}{s}$, which include the zeros of $\zeta(s)$. Developing an understanding of the zeros of $\zeta(s)$ is difficult (and indeed, after 150 years our understanding is somewhat limited), and this is the primary difficulty that we seek to avoid in this book. Our approach here will be to work on this contour, and other contours to the right of 1, and to better understand the integrand.

We expect cancelation in the integral because $x^s = x^c \cdot x^{it}$ has mean value 0 as t ranges through any interval of length $2\pi/\log x$. In order to obtain significant cancelation we need $A(s)/s$ to not vary much as t runs through this interval. If we integrate by parts, first integrating the x^s, we do succeed in getting appropriate cancelation:

$$\int_{c-iT}^{c+iT} A(s)\frac{x^s}{s}ds = \left[A(s)\frac{x^s}{s\log x}\right]_{c-iT}^{c+iT} - \int_{c-iT}^{c+iT} A'(s)\frac{x^s}{s\log x}ds + \int_{c-iT}^{c+iT} A(s)\frac{x^s}{s^2\log x}ds.$$

The first term is $\ll x/T$, whereas the second and third terms correspond to using Perron's formula to evaluate $\frac{1}{\log x}\sum_{n\leq x} f(n)\log n$ and $\frac{1}{\log x}\sum_{n\leq x} f(n)\log(x/n)$, respectively. Thus integration by parts here corresponds to the identity

$$\log x = \log n + \log(x/n).$$

Note that the third term is thus $\ll x/\log x$, and so we have

$$\int_{c-iT}^{c+iT} A(s)\frac{x^s}{s}ds = -\frac{1}{\log x}\int_{c-iT}^{c+iT} A'(s)\frac{x^s}{s}ds + O\Big(\frac{x}{\log x}\Big).$$

[1] An important exception are log-free zero density estimates (very close to the 1-line), which are a crucial ingredient in the classical proofs of Linnik's theorem. Our techniques bear features in common with these classical log-free arguments.

In other words we have

Perron2

$$\sum_{n\le x} a_n = -\frac{1}{\log x}\int_{c-iT}^{c+iT} \frac{A'}{A}(s)\cdot A(s)\frac{x^s}{s}ds + O\Big(\frac{x}{\log x}\Big), \tag{2.4.6}$$

from which we deduce

$$\sum_{n\le x} a_n \ll \frac{\max_{|t|\le T} A\Big(1+\frac{1}{\log x}+it\Big)}{\log x}\cdot x\int_{-T}^{T}\Big|\frac{A'(c+it)}{A(c+it)}\Big|\frac{1}{1+|t|}dt + \frac{x}{\log x}.$$

Now we have $|A|/\log x$ as desired, and we need to bound the integral. The integral over A'/A is now the key difficulty and we have no technique to approach this for general A. In the next chapter we obtain the upper bound $\int_t |(F'/F)(c+it)|^2 dt \ll \log x$ when $a_n = f(n)$ so that $A = F$. In this case, by Cauchying, the above bound is a factor of $\sqrt{\log x}$ bigger than the Halász bound. This suggests that if we can get two F'/F factors into our integral we might be in luck. In the next subsection we do exactly this.

Keyid

2.4.4. The basic identity

Instead of directly developing (PerFT 2.4.5), we work with a different identity which turns out to be much more flexible. Herein we need only suppose that the sums defining both F and F'/F are absolutely convergent to the right of the 1-line

keyid

Lemma 2.4.2. *For any $x>2$ with x not an integer, and any $c>1$, we have*

$$\sum_{2\le n\le x}\Big(f(n)-\frac{\Lambda_f(n)}{\log n}\Big) = \int_0^\infty\int_0^\infty \frac{1}{2\pi i}\int_{c-i\infty}^{c+i\infty}\frac{F'}{F}(s+\alpha)F'(s+\alpha+\beta)\frac{x^s}{s}ds\ d\beta\ d\alpha.$$

Proof. We give two proofs. In the first proof, we interchange the integrals over α and β, and s. First perform the integral over β. Since $\int_0^\infty F'(s+\alpha+\beta)d\beta = 1-F(s+\alpha)$ we are left with

$$\frac{1}{2\pi i}\int_{c-i\infty}^{c+i\infty}\int_0^\infty \Big(\frac{F'}{F}(s+\alpha)-F'(s+\alpha)\Big)\frac{x^s}{s}\ d\alpha\ ds,$$

and now performing the integral over α this is

$$\frac{1}{2\pi i}\int_{c-i\infty}^{c+i\infty}\Big(-\log F(s)+F(s)-1\Big)\frac{x^s}{s}ds.$$

Perron's formula now shows that the above matches the left hand side of the stated identity.

For the second (of course closely related) proof, Perron's formula gives that

$$\frac{1}{2\pi i}\int_{c-i\infty}^{c+i\infty}\frac{F'}{F}(s+\alpha)F'(s+\alpha+\beta)\frac{x^s}{s}ds = \sum_{\substack{2\le \ell,m\\ \ell m\le x}}\frac{\Lambda_f(\ell)}{\ell^\alpha}\frac{f(m)\log m}{m^{\alpha+\beta}}.$$

Integrating now over α and β gives

$$\sum_{\substack{2\le \ell,m\\ \ell m\le x}}\frac{\Lambda_f(\ell)f(m)}{\log(\ell m)} = \sum_{2\le n\le x}\Big(f(n)-\frac{\Lambda_f(n)}{\log n}\Big),$$

where we use that $\sum_{\ell m=n}\Lambda_f(\ell)f(m)=f(n)$. $\square$

REMARK 2.4.2.1. One idea is to use Perron's formula further to the right of the 1-line so with $c = 1+\alpha$ for $\frac{1}{\log x} \le \alpha \le 1$, and dividing through by x^α, we obtain

$$x^{-(1+\alpha)} \sum_{n\le x} f(n)\log n = -\frac{1}{2i\pi}\int_{t=-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{F'(1+\alpha+it)}{1+\alpha+it} x^{it} dt.$$

Although this is not useful in of itself, computing the mean square yields Parseval's identity:

eq:Hal12

$$\int_1^\infty \Big| t^{-(1+\alpha)} \sum_{n\le t} f(n)\log n\Big|^2 \frac{dt}{t} = \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \Big|\frac{F'(1+\alpha+iy)}{1+\alpha+iy}\Big|^2 dy. \tag{2.4.7}$$

This was the basis of the proofs of Halász's Theorem in [?], [?] and [?].

2.4.5. Complications with the small primes

In Lemma 2.5.4 in the next chapter, we give an upper bound on $\int_{-T}^{T} |(F'/F)(c+it)|^2 dt$, but only in the case that $f(p^k)=0$ for all primes $p \le T^2$. Hence we need to split f into its small and large prime factors: Let $y \ge 2$ be a parameter, and define the multiplicative functions $s(.)$ (for small) and $\ell(.)$ (for large) by

$$s(n) = \begin{cases} f(n) & \text{if } P(n) \le y \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad \text{and} \quad \ell(n) = \begin{cases} f(n) & \text{if } p(n) > y \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases},$$

where $p(n)$ and $P(n)$ denote the smallest and largest prime factor of n, respectively. Therefore f is the convolution of s and ℓ, and setting

$$\mathcal{S}(s) = \sum_{n\ge 1} \frac{s(n)}{n^s} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathcal{L}(s) = \sum_{n\ge 1} \frac{\ell(n)}{n^s}, \quad \text{we have} \quad F(s) = \mathcal{S}(s)\mathcal{L}(s).$$

We define Λ_s and Λ_ℓ analogously. Note that $\mathcal{S}$ and $\mathcal{L}$ depend on y.

keyidr1s

LEMMA 2.4.3. *Let F, $\mathcal{S}$, $\mathcal{L}$, and y be as above. Let $c > 1$ be a real number. Then*

$$\int_0^\infty \int_0^\infty \frac{1}{2\pi i}\int_{c-i\infty}^{c+i\infty} \mathcal{S}(s)\mathcal{L}(s+\alpha+\beta)\frac{\mathcal{L}'}{\mathcal{L}}(s+\alpha)\frac{\mathcal{L}'}{\mathcal{L}}(s+\alpha+\beta)\frac{x^s}{s} ds d\beta d\alpha$$
$$= \sum_{n\le x} f(n) - \sum_{m\le x} s(m) - \sum_{mk\le x} s(m)\frac{\Lambda_\ell(k)}{\log k}.$$

PROOF. We can swap the order of the integrals since we are in the domain of absolute convergence. We begin by integrating over β obtaining, since $\lim_{\eta\to\infty} \mathcal{L}(s+\alpha+\eta) = 1$,

$$\int_0^\infty \frac{1}{2\pi i}\int_{c-i\infty}^{c+i\infty} \mathcal{S}(s)\frac{\mathcal{L}'}{\mathcal{L}}(s+\alpha)\Big(1-\mathcal{L}(s+\alpha)\Big)\frac{x^s}{s} ds d\alpha.$$

Next we integrate over α to obtain

$$\frac{1}{2\pi i}\int_{c-i\infty}^{c+i\infty} \mathcal{S}(s)(-1-\log\mathcal{L}(s)+\mathcal{L}(s))\frac{x^s}{s} ds.$$

The third term is the Perron integral (2.4.4) with Dirichlet series $\mathcal{S}(s)\mathcal{L}(s) = F(s)$ and so we obtain the sum of $f(n)$ over $n \le x$. The first term is the Perron integral (2.4.4) with Dirichlet series $\mathcal{S}(s)$ and so we obtain the sum of $s(m)$ over $m \le x$.

The finally the middle term has Dirichlet series $\mathcal{S}(s)\log\mathcal{L}(s)$ which gives the sum of $s(m)\Lambda_\ell(k)/\log k$ over $mk \le x$. $\square$

We need to truncate all of the three infinite integrals in Lemma 2.4.3. We begin by showing that the integrals over α and β can be reduced to a very short interval.

keyidr1

Lemma 2.4.4. *Let F, $\mathcal{S}$, $\mathcal{L}$, and y be as above. Let $\eta > 0$ and $c > 1$ be real numbers. Then*

keyidr2

$$\int_{\alpha=0}^{\eta}\int_{\beta=0}^{2\eta}\frac{1}{2\pi i}\int_{c-i\infty}^{c+i\infty}\mathcal{S}(s)\mathcal{L}(s+\alpha+\beta)\frac{\mathcal{L}'}{\mathcal{L}}(s+\alpha)\frac{\mathcal{L}'}{\mathcal{L}}(s+\alpha+\beta)\frac{x^s}{s}ds\,d\beta\,d\alpha \tag{2.4.8}$$

keyidr3

$$= \sum_{n\le x} f(n) - \sum_{mn\le x} s(m)\frac{\ell(n)}{n^\eta} - \int_0^\eta \sum_{mkn\le x} s(m)\frac{\Lambda_\ell(k)}{k^\alpha}\frac{\ell(n)}{n^{2\eta+\alpha}}d\alpha. \tag{2.4.9}$$

Proof of Lemma 2.4.4. First we perform the integral over β in (2.4.8), obtaining

$$\int_{\alpha=0}^{\eta}\frac{1}{2\pi i}\int_{c-i\infty}^{c+i\infty}\mathcal{S}(s)\frac{\mathcal{L}'}{\mathcal{L}}(s+\alpha)\Big(\mathcal{L}(s+\alpha+2\eta)-\mathcal{L}(s+\alpha)\Big)\frac{x^s}{s}ds\,d\alpha.$$

The term arising from $\mathcal{L}(s+\alpha+2\eta)$ above gives the third term in (2.4.9), using Perron's formula. The term arising from $\mathcal{L}(s+\alpha)$ gives

$$-\int_0^\eta \frac{1}{2\pi i}\int_{c-i\infty}^{c+i\infty}\mathcal{S}(s)\mathcal{L}'(s+\alpha)\frac{x^s}{s}ds\ d\alpha = \frac{1}{2\pi i}\int_{c-i\infty}^{c+i\infty}\mathcal{S}(s)(\mathcal{L}(s)-\mathcal{L}(s+\eta))\frac{x^s}{s}ds,$$

upon evaluating the integral over α. Perron's formula now matches the two terms above with the first two terms in (2.4.9). This establishes our identity. $\square$

2.4.6. An explicit version

We now bound the contributions of the second and third terms in (2.4.9), giving the first error term in (2.4.11).

errors23

Lemma 2.4.5. *Keep the notations of Lemma 2.4.4, and suppose that $|\Lambda_f(n)| \le \kappa\Lambda(n)$ for all n. For $\eta = 1/\log y$, we have*

$$\sum_{mn\le x} s(m)\frac{\ell(n)}{n^\eta} + \int_0^\eta \sum_{mkn\le x} s(m)\frac{\Lambda_\ell(k)}{k^\alpha}\frac{\ell(n)}{n^{2\eta+\alpha}}d\alpha \ll \frac{x}{\log x}(\log y)^\kappa.$$

Proof. We take the absolute value of all of the summands. Each integer $N \le x$ appears at most once in a non-zero term in the first sum, and then the summand is $\le |f(N)|/n^\eta$. We get an upper bound, using Corollary 1.2.3 of [The Book], of

$$\ll \frac{x}{\log x}\prod_{p<y}\Big(1-\frac{|f(p)|}{p}\Big)\prod_{y\le p\le x}\Big(1-\frac{|f(p)|}{p^{1+\eta}}\Big) \ll \frac{x}{\log x}\prod_{p<y}\Big(1-\frac{1}{p}\Big)^{-\kappa}\prod_{y\le p\le x}\Big(1-\frac{1}{p^{1+\eta}}\Big)^{-\kappa}$$

$$\ll \frac{x}{\log x}(\log y)^\kappa$$

The second term in the lemma, is

$$\ll \int_0^\eta \sum_{mkn\le x}|s(m)|\frac{|\Lambda(k)|}{k^\alpha}\frac{|\ell(n)|}{n^{2\eta+\alpha}}d\alpha \ll \int_0^\eta x^{1-\alpha}\sum_{mn\le x}\frac{|s(m)|}{m^{1-\alpha}}\frac{|\ell(n)|}{n^{1+2\eta}}d\alpha,$$

upon summing over k; and this is is

$$\ll \int_0^\eta x^{1-\alpha} \prod_{p<y} \Big(1 - \frac{1}{p^{1-\alpha}}\Big)^{-\kappa} \prod_{y \le p \le x} \Big(1 - \frac{1}{p^{1+2\eta}}\Big)^{-\kappa} d\alpha \ll \frac{x}{\log x} (\log y)^\kappa,$$

as desired. □

2.4.7. Moving and truncating the contours

Finally we need to truncate the integral over s at a reasonable height T. This is a standard procedure in analytic number theory but we will complicate this by moving the contour, for each α and β, to a convenient vertical line.

xkeyidr1

Proposition 2.4.6. *Let $\frac{2}{3} > \eta = \frac{1}{\log y} > 0$ and $c_0 = 1 + \frac{1}{\log x}$. If $x > y \ge T > 1$ then*

xkeyidr2

(2.4.10)
$$\int_0^\eta \int_0^\eta \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{c_0 - iT}^{c_0 + iT} \mathcal{S}(s - \alpha - \beta) \mathcal{L}(s + \beta) \frac{\mathcal{L}'}{\mathcal{L}}(s - \beta) \frac{\mathcal{L}'}{\mathcal{L}}(s + \beta) \frac{x^{s - \alpha - \beta}}{s - \alpha - \beta} \, ds \, d\beta \, d\alpha$$

xkeyidr3

$$= \sum_{n \le x} f(n) + O\left(\frac{x}{\log x} (\log y)^\kappa + \frac{x}{T} (\log x)^\kappa \right). \tag{2.4.11}$$

Moreover, one can replace each occurrence of

$$\frac{\mathcal{L}'}{\mathcal{L}}(z) \quad by \quad \sum_{y < n < x/y} \frac{\Lambda_\ell(n)}{n^z},$$

Proof. Fix $\alpha, \beta \in [0, \eta]$. If we write the terms in the Dirichlet series in (keyidr2 2.4.8) as a, b, c, d respectively, then, by Perron's formula, the integral over s equals$\sum_{abcd \le x} (bcd)^{-\alpha} (bd)^{-\beta}$. Each of c and d are $> y$, by the definition of $\mathcal{L}$, and so each of a, b, c and d must be $\le x/y$. Hence we may truncate each of the Dirichlet series to a finite sum, meaning that we may move the line of the s-integration to $\mathrm{Re}(s) = c_{\alpha,\beta}$ for any $c_{\alpha,\beta} > 0$. Moreover we can, and will, replace

$$\frac{\mathcal{L}'}{\mathcal{L}}(s + \alpha) = \sum_{p(n) > y} \frac{\Lambda_\ell(n)}{n^{s+\alpha}} \quad \text{by} \quad \sum_{y < n < x/y} \frac{\Lambda_\ell(n)}{n^{s+\alpha}},$$

and similarly for $(\mathcal{L}'/\mathcal{L})(s + \alpha + \beta)$.

Let $c_{\alpha,\beta} = c_0 - \alpha - \beta/2$, so that the inner integral over s in (keyidr2 2.4.8) is

integral

(2.4.12)
$$\frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{c_0 - i\infty}^{c_0 + i\infty} \mathcal{S}(s - \alpha - \beta/2) \Big(\sum_{y \le m \le x/y} \frac{\Lambda_\ell(m)}{m^{s - \beta/2}} \Big) \Big(\sum_{y < n < x/y} \frac{\Lambda_\ell(n)}{n^{s + \beta/2}} \Big) \mathcal{L}(s + \beta/2) \frac{x^{s - \alpha - \beta/2}}{s - \alpha - \beta/2} ds.$$

The error introduced in truncating at T is, by the quantitative Perron formula, (quanPer 2.4.2),

$$\ll \sum_a \sum_{y < m, n < x/y} \sum_b \frac{\Lambda(m)\Lambda(n)}{m^\alpha n^{\alpha+\beta}} |s(a)| \frac{|\ell(b)|}{b^{\alpha+\beta}} \Big(\frac{x}{abmn} \Big)^{c_0 - \alpha - \beta/2} \min \Big(1, \frac{1}{T |\log(x/abmn)|} \Big).$$

The terms with $N \le x/2$ or $N > 3x/2$, where $abmn = N$, contribute

$$\ll \frac{x^{1-\alpha-\beta/2}}{T} \sum_{y<m<x/y} \frac{\Lambda(m)}{m^{1-\beta/2}} \sum_{y<n<x/y} \frac{\Lambda(n)}{n^{1+\beta/2}} \sum_a \frac{|s(a)|}{a^{1-\alpha-\beta/2}} \sum_b \frac{|\ell(b)|}{b^{1+\beta/2}}$$

$$\ll \frac{x^{1-\alpha-\beta/2}}{T} \min\{\log x, x^{\beta/2}/\beta\} \min\{\log x, 1/\beta\} \prod_{p\le y}\left(1-\frac{1}{p^{1-\alpha-\beta/2}}\right)^{-\kappa} \prod_{y<p\le x}\left(1-\frac{1}{p^{1+\beta/2}}\right)^{-\kappa}$$

$$\ll \frac{x^{1-\alpha}}{T} \min\{\log x, 1/\beta\}^2 (\log x)^\kappa.$$

Integrating this over $\alpha > 0$ and then $\beta > 0$ gives $\ll \frac{x}{T}(\log x)^\kappa$.

For the terms with $x/2 \le N := k_1k_2mn \le 3x/2$ we have $(x/N)^{c_0-\alpha-\beta/2} \ll 1$. Next we integrate over α and β, and then twice use the bound $\sum_{ab=c} \Lambda(a)d_\kappa(b) \le d_\kappa(c)\log c$ to obtain

$$\ll d_\kappa(m) \sum_{k_2r=N/m} \frac{\Lambda(k_1)}{\log(N/m)} \sum_{k_2n=r} \frac{\Lambda(k_2)d_\kappa(n)}{\log r} \le d_\kappa(m) \sum_{k_1r=N/m} \frac{\Lambda(k_1)d_\kappa(r)}{\log(N/m)} \le d_\kappa(N),$$

where r only has prime factors $> y$. Hence these terms contribute

$$\ll \sum_{x/2\le N\le 2x} d_\kappa(N) \min\left(1, \frac{1}{T|\log(x/N)|}\right) \ll \frac{x}{T}(\log x)^{\kappa-1}\log T.$$

We now summarize the proof: We begin with identity in Lemma 2.4.4, replacing the inner integral in (2.4.8) by (2.4.12). We truncate the inner integral obtaining the error in Lemma ??. The terms in (2.4.9) are bounded by Lemma 2.4.5. Finally we replace β by 2β. proving the Proposition. $\square$

2.4.8. Exercises

casey=1 EXERCISE 2.4.2. Verify (2.4.1) directly in the case $y = 1$.

EXERCISE 2.4.3. Let $y > 0$ and $c > 0$ be real numbers. Show that

$$\frac{1}{2\pi i}\int_{c-i\infty}^{c+i\infty} y^s\Gamma(s)ds = e^{-1/y}.$$

Perex EXERCISE 2.4.4. Let $a_n \in \mathbb{C}$. By dividing the n into the cases when $|n-x| > x/2$, or $|n-x| \le x/T$, or $kx/T \le |n-x| \le 2kx/T$ where $k = 2^j$ for $0 \le j \le J := [\log_2 T]$, show that the error in Perron's formula, (2.4.5), is

$$\ll \frac{x^c}{T}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{|a_n|}{n^c} + \sum_{j=0}^{[\log_2 T]} \frac{2^c}{2^j} \sum_{|x-n|\le 2^jx/T} |a_n|.$$

Show that if each $|a_n| \le d_\kappa(n)$ then we obtain the claimed error term.

IntegwithF' EXERCISE 2.4.5. Deduce (2.4.6) by applying Perron's formula to the sum on the right-hand side of the displayed equation in exercise ??.

CHAPTER 2.5

The proof of Halász's Theorem

We will prove a technical version of Halász's Theorem:

GenHal

THEOREM 2.5.1 (Halász's Theorem). *Let f be a multiplicative function with $|\Lambda_f(n)| \leq \kappa\Lambda(n)$ for all n. Then*

$$\sum_{n\leq x} f(n) \ll \frac{x}{\log x}\int_{1/\log x}^{1}\Big(\max_{|t|\leq (\log x)^\kappa}\Big|\frac{F(1+\sigma+it)}{1+\sigma+it}\Big|\Big)\frac{d\sigma}{\sigma} + \frac{x}{\log x}(\log\log x)^\kappa.$$

The following corollary is easier to work with in practice:

HalCor

COROLLARY 2.5.2. *Let f be a multiplicative function with $|\Lambda_f(n)| \leq \kappa\Lambda(n)$ for all n. We have*

$$\sum_{n\leq x} f(n) \ll (1+M)e^{-M}x(\log x)^{\kappa-1} + \frac{x}{\log x}(\log\log x)^\kappa.$$

where

$$\max_{|t|\leq(\log x)^\kappa}\Big|\frac{F(1+1/\log x+it)}{1+1/\log x+it}\Big| =: e^{-M}(\log x)^\kappa.$$

This leads to the statement of Halász's Theorem, given in Theorem 2.3.1.

The "trivial" upper bound on this sum is given by noting that each $|f(n)| \leq d_\kappa(n)$ and then applying exercise 1.1.14(i), so that $|\sum_{n\leq x} f(n)| \ll_\kappa x(\log x)^{\kappa-1}$.

EXERCISE 2.5.1. Prove that $M \geq \kappa M_{f/\kappa}(x,(\log x)^\kappa) + O(1)$.

Hence, since $M \gg 1$, Corollary 2.5.2 gives bounds that are no worse than trivial, and better if M is large.

Combining this last exercise with exercise 2.3.1 we deduce the following consequence:

HalCorSimp

COROLLARY 2.5.3. *We have*

$$\sum_{n\leq x} f(n) \ll_\kappa \frac{x}{\log x}\cdot(1+M')(e^{-M'}\log x)^\kappa.$$

where $M' = M_{f/\kappa}(x,(\log x)^\kappa)$.

2.5.1. A mean square estimate

To prove Halász's theorem, we need an estimate for the mean square of the sums over prime powers that appear in (2.4.10).

MeanSquarePrimes

LEMMA 2.5.4. *For any complex numbers $\{a(n)\}_{n\geq 1}$, and any $T \geq 1$ we have*

$$\int_{-T}^{T}\Big|\sum_{T^2\leq n\leq x}\frac{a(n)\Lambda(n)}{n^{it}}\Big|^2 dt \ll \sum_{T^2\leq n\leq x} n|a(n)|^2\Lambda(n).$$

Proof. Let Φ be an even non-negative function with $\Phi(t) \geq 1$ for $-1 \leq t \leq 1$, for which the Fourier transform of Φ is compactly supported. For example, take $\Phi(x) = \frac{1}{(\sin 1)^2}(\frac{\sin x}{x})^2$ and note that $\hat{\Phi}(x)$ is supported in $[-1, 1]$. We may then bound our integral by

$$\leq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \Big| \sum_{T^2 < n \leq x} \frac{a(n)\Lambda(n)}{n^{it}} \Big|^2 \Phi\Big(\frac{t}{T}\Big) dt$$
$$\leq \sum_{T^2 < m,n \leq x} \Lambda(m)\Lambda(n)\ |a(m)a(n)|\ |T\ \widehat{\Phi}(T\log(n/m))|.$$

Since $2|a(m)a(n)| \leq |a(m)|^2 + |a(n)|^2$ and symmetry, the above is

$$\leq \sum_{T^2 < m \leq x} |a(m)|^2 \Lambda(m) \sum_{T^2 \leq n \leq x} \Lambda(n) |T\widehat{\Phi}(T\log(n/m))|.$$

Since $\widehat{\Phi}$ is compactly supported (and thus bounded), for a given m the sum over n ranges over only those values with $|n - m| \ll m/T$. Therefore, using the Brun-Titchmarsh theorem, the sum over n is seen to be $\ll m$. The lemma follows. □

2.5.2. Proof of Halász's theorem

Proof of Theorem GenHal 2.5.1. The integral in (xkeyidr2 2.4.10), for fixed $\alpha, \beta \in [0, \eta]$, is

sbound

$$\ll x^{1-\alpha-\beta/2} \Big(\max_{|t| \leq T} \frac{|\mathcal{S}(c_0 - \alpha - \beta/2 + it)\mathcal{L}(c_0 + \beta/2 + it)|}{|c_0 + \beta/2 + it|} \Big)$$
$$\times \int_{-T}^{T} \Big| \sum_{y \leq m \leq x/y} \frac{\Lambda_\ell(m)}{m^{c_0 - \beta/2 + it}} \Big| \Big| \sum_{y \leq n \leq x/y} \frac{\Lambda_\ell(n)}{n^{c_0 + \beta/2 + it}} \Big| dt, \tag{2.5.1}$$

which allows us to apply Lemma MeanSquarePrimes 2.5.4. Now

$$\left| \frac{\mathcal{S}(c_0 - \alpha - \beta/2 + it)}{\mathcal{S}(c_0 + \beta/2 + it)} \right| \ll \exp\left(\kappa \sum_{p \leq y} \left(\frac{1}{p^{c_0 - \alpha - \beta/2}} - \frac{1}{p^{c_0 + \beta/2}} \right) \right) \ll 1,$$

since $\alpha, \beta, c_0 - 1 \ll \eta$. Therefore

$$\frac{|\mathcal{S}(c_0 - \alpha - \beta/2 + it)\mathcal{L}(c_0 + \beta/2 + it)|}{|c_0 + \beta/2 + it|} \ll \Big| \frac{F(c_0 + \beta/2 + it)}{c_0 + \beta/2 + it} \Big|.$$

Using Cauchy-Schwarz and Lemma MeanSquarePrimes 2.5.4 the integral in (sbound 2.5.1) is

HalRev9

$$\ll \Big(\sum_{y \leq m \leq x/y} \frac{\Lambda(m)}{m^{1-\beta}} \Big)^{\frac{1}{2}} \Big(\sum_{y \leq n \leq x/y} \frac{\Lambda(n)}{n^{1+\beta}} \Big)^{\frac{1}{2}} \ll (x/y)^{\beta/2} \min\Big(\log x, \frac{1}{\beta} \Big), \tag{2.5.2}$$

provided $y \geq T^2$. Combining the last two estimates, we find that the quantity in (sbound 2.5.1) is

$$\ll x^{1-\alpha} \min\Big(\log x, \frac{1}{\beta} \Big) \max_{|t| \leq T} \Big| \frac{F(c_0 + \beta/2 + it)}{c_0 + \beta/2 + it} \Big|.$$

Changing variable $\sigma = \beta + 1/\log x$, the integral in (xkeyidr2 2.4.10) is

NB0

$$\ll \int_{\alpha=0}^{1} x^{1-\alpha} \int_{1/\log x}^{2/\log y} \Big(\max_{|t| \leq T} \Big| \frac{F(1 + \sigma + it)}{1 + \sigma + it} \Big| \Big) \frac{d\sigma}{\sigma} d\alpha. \tag{2.5.3}$$

Now $\int_{\alpha=0}^{1} x^{1-\alpha} d\alpha \leq \int_{\alpha=0}^{\infty} x^{1-\alpha} d\alpha = x/\log x$. Moreover $|F(1 + \sigma + it)| \ll (\log x)^\kappa$, so that those σ for which $|F(1+\sigma+it)|$ is maximized with $|t| > (\log x)^\kappa$, contribute

$\ll \frac{x}{\log x} \log\log x$ to the integral. The result then follows by letting $y = T^2$ where $T = (\log x)^{\kappa+2}$ in Proposition 2.4.6. $\square$

PROOF OF COROLLARY 2.5.2. By the maximum modulus principle we have that the maximum of $\left|\frac{F(1+\sigma+it)}{1+\sigma+it}\right|$ within the box

$$\{u + iv : \ 1 + 1/\log x \leq u \leq 2, \ |v| \leq (\log x)^\kappa\}$$

lies on one of the boundaries: If the maximum lies the boundary with $|v| \leq v_1 := (\log x)^\kappa$ we have $|F(1 + \sigma \pm iv_1)| \ll (\log x)^\kappa \leq |1 + \sigma \pm iv_1|$, or on the boundary with $u = 2$ we have $|F(2 + it)| \leq \zeta(2)^\kappa \ll |2 + it|$. Therefore the integral in (??) is $\ll \log\log x$ and the result follows. Hence we may assume that the maximum lies on the line $\mathrm{Re}(s) = c_0$. Noting also that $|F(1 + \sigma + it)| \leq \zeta(1 + \sigma)^\kappa \ll 1/\sigma^\kappa$, we obtain

$$\max_{|t|\leq(\log x)^\kappa} \left|\frac{F(1 + \sigma + it)}{1 + \sigma + it}\right| \ll \min\left(e^{-M}(\log x)^\kappa, \left(\frac{1}{\sigma}\right)^\kappa\right).$$

Inserting this in Halász's theorem 2.5.1 (and splitting the integral at $\sigma = e^{M/\kappa}/\log x$) we obtain the corollary. $\square$

PROOF OF COROLLARY 2.3.2. Here $\kappa = 1$. By exercise 2.3.2 we have $e^{-M} \ll e^{-M_f(x,\log x)}$ so we have the upper bound $\ll (1+M_f(x, \log x))e^{-M_f(x,\log x)} + \log\log x/\log x$. The second term is smaller than the first by the second part of exercise 2.3.1. $\square$

PROOF OF THEOREM 2.3.1. If $T \geq \log x$ then $M_f(x, \log x) \geq M_f(x, T)$, so that $(1 + M_f(x, \log x))e^{-M_f(x,\log x)} \leq (1 + M_f(x, T))e^{-M_f(x,T)}$, and the $1/T$ term is smaller, by the second part of exercise 2.3.1. If $1 \leq T \leq \log x$ then we apply Theorem 2.5.1 with $\kappa = 1$ and observe that if the maximum of $\left|\frac{F(1+\sigma+it)}{1+\sigma+it}\right|$ occurs with $T < |t| \leq \log x$ then this is $\leq \zeta(1 + \sigma)/|t| \ll 1/(\sigma T)$. Bounding the integral there using this estimate leads to the $1/T$ term, as claimed. $\square$

2.5.3. A hybrid result

Corollary 2.5.2 does not take into account the location of the maximum, even though Theorem 2.5.1 does. We remedy that here.

HalCorHybrid

COROLLARY 2.5.5. *Let $t_1 = t_f(x, \log x)$. Then*

$$\sum_{n\leq x} f(n) \ll (1 + M_f(x, \log x) + \log t_1)\frac{e^{-M_f(x,\log x)}}{1 + |t_1|}x + \frac{x}{\log x}(\log\log x).$$

PROOF. By exercise 2.3.2 we have

$$e^{-M} \asymp \frac{e^{-M_f(x,\log x)}}{1 + |t|} \leq e^{-M_f(x,\log x)}.$$

Substituting this into Corollary 2.5.2 we get the result. $\square$

In the next chapter we will compare the mean values of $f(n)$ and $f(n)/n^{it_1}$, and obtain a stronger result (and stronger than Corollary 2.1.11 and Lemma 2.1.13).

2.5.4. Exercises

casey=1 EXERCISE 2.5.2. Verify (2.4.1) directly in the case $y = 1$.

EXERCISE 2.5.3. Let $y > 0$ and $c > 0$ be real numbers. Show that

$$\frac{1}{2\pi i}\int_{c-i\infty}^{c+i\infty} y^s\Gamma(s)ds = e^{-1/y}.$$

Perex EXERCISE 2.5.4. Let $a_n \in \mathbb{C}$. By dividing the n into the cases when $n \leq x/2$, or $n > 3x/2$, or $kx/T \leq |n-x| \leq (k+1)x/T$ for $0 \leq k \leq T/2$, show that the error in Perron's formula, (2.4.5), is

$$\ll \frac{x^c}{T}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{|a(n)|}{n^c} + \sum_{k=0}^{T/2}\frac{2^c}{(k+1)}\sum_{kx/T\leq|x-n|\leq(k+1)x/T}|a(n)|.$$

Show that if each $|a_n| \leq d_\kappa(n)$ then we obtain the claimed error term.

IntegwithF' EXERCISE 2.5.5. Deduce (2.4.6) by applying Perron's formula to the sum on the right-hand side of the displayed equation in exercise ??.

CHAPTER 2.6

Some examples, and a discussion of whether Halász's Theorem is best possible

In this chapter we show that Halász's Theorem cannot be much improved. It will be helpful to first give a few examples of multiplicative that will allow us to appreciate the limitations in what can be proved here and later. After that we discuss how to find $f(.)$ for which the mean value is at least as big as the upper bound given in Halász's Theorem. Finally we show that for all f, there exist x-values for which the mean value is bounded below by a quantity almost as big as Halász's bound.

sec:examples

2.6.1. Two examples

We now discuss two examples which establish that the theorems of this chapter have the best possible error term. We will justify the claims of this subsection in Chapter CalculateExamples ??. In section sec:BestConsts 2.3.5 we saw the following example of a completely multiplicative, real-valued, function f, which correlates with p^i:

$$f(p) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } \mathrm{Re}(p^i) \geq 0; \\ -1 & \text{if } \mathrm{Re}(p^i) < 0. \end{cases}$$

In other words $f(p)$ is chosen to be ± 1 so that $f(p)\cos(\log p) = |\cos(\log p)|$. The remarkable fact about the asymptotics of the mean value of f is that there exists a constant $c \neq 0$ such that

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{n\leq x} f(n) &= cx^{1+i}(\log x)^{\frac{2}{\pi}-1} + \bar{c}x^{1-i}(\log x)^{\frac{2}{\pi}-1} + o(x(\log x)^{\frac{2}{\pi}-1}) \\ &= (2C\cos(\log x + \gamma) + o(1))x(\log x)^{\frac{2}{\pi}-1}\end{aligned}$$

where $c = Ce^{i\gamma}$. Note that this is a multiple of $x(\log x)^{\frac{2}{\pi}-1}$ which oscillates between -1 and 1, and is regularly 0.

A related construction is given by $g(p) = (1 + f(p))/2$, which only takes values 0 and 1, for which

$$\sum_{n\leq x} g(n) = (2C'\cos(\log x + \gamma') + o(1))x(\log x)^{\frac{1}{\pi}-1}$$

for some real numbers C', γ'.

SDex

2.6.2. The Selberg-Delange Theorem

Selberg showed that for any $\kappa \in \mathbb{C}$ we have

$$\sum_{n\leq x} d_\kappa(n) = \left\{\frac{1}{\Gamma(\kappa)} + o(1)\right\} x(\log x)^{\kappa-1} = \left\{\frac{e^{\gamma(1-\kappa)}}{\Gamma(\kappa)} + o(1)\right\} \cdot x\ \mathcal{P}(d_\kappa; x).$$

That is, the "expected" mean value $x\,\mathcal{P}(d_\kappa; x)$ times $e^{\gamma(1-\kappa)}/\Gamma(\kappa)$. [1] The Γ function is defined as the meromorphic function that extrapolates the factorial function, and so satisfies the functional equation $\Gamma(z+1) = z\Gamma(z)$. Hence $1/\Gamma(\kappa) = 0$ for $\kappa = 0, -1, -2, \ldots$, and one can show that these are the only such values. Hence Selberg's result only gives an asymptotic formula for $\kappa \neq 0, -1, -2, \ldots$; we will discuss the mean of $d_{-k},\ k \in \mathbb{N}$, in chapter **??**.

We can use this result (with $\kappa = i$) to establish that Halász's Theorem cannot be improved —see section 2.6.3.

TheoremSD

Theorem 2.6.1 (Selberg-Delange). *Let f be a multiplicative function with $|f(n)| \leq 1$ for all $n \geq 1$. Assume that*

HypLambda

$$\psi_f(x) := \sum_{n\leq x} \Lambda_f(n) = \kappa x + O\Big(\frac{x}{(\log x)^\tau}\Big) \tag{2.6.1}$$

for some τ in the range $2-\mathrm{Re}(\kappa) \geq \tau > 0$. For any fixed $\epsilon > 0$ we have

SDAsymp

$$S_f(x) := \sum_{n\leq x} f(n) \ = \ \frac{e^{\gamma(1-\kappa)}}{\Gamma(\kappa)} \mathcal{P}(f; x)\ x + O\Big(\frac{x}{(\log x)^{\tau-\epsilon}}\Big). \tag{2.6.2}$$

The prime number theorem implies the result of Selberg for $|\tau| \leq 1$. We will give the proof of the Selberg-Delange theorem in chapter **??**, as well as a startling application.

HalBesties

2.6.3. Functions for which Halász's Theorem cannot be improved

Define f to be the multiplicative function with

$$f(p) = \begin{cases} i & \text{for } p \leq \sqrt{x}; \\ (\log x/p)^{-i} & \text{for } \sqrt{x} < p \leq x. \end{cases}$$

An integer $n \leq x$ has no more than one prime factor $> \sqrt{x}$, and writing such integers as pm, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{n\leq x} f(n) &= \sum_{n\leq x} d_i(n) + \sum_{\sqrt{x}<p\leq x} (f(p)-i) \sum_{m\leq x/p} d_i(n) \\ &= \Big\{\frac{1}{\Gamma(i)} + o(1)\Big\}\ \frac{x}{\log x}\log\log x,\end{aligned}$$

using the Selberg-Delange Theorem (as discussed in section 2.6.2). It is not difficult to show that $M_f(x, \log x) = \log\log x + O(1)$, and so this example shows that

$$\sum_{n\leq x} f(n) \asymp (1+M)e^{-M}x;$$

and therefore Corollary 2.5.2 cannot be improved, other than perhaps tightening the implicit constant.

This same idea will be developed developed further in section **??**, taking $f(p) = 1$ for $p \leq y$, and $f(p) = i$ for $y < p \leq \sqrt{x}$. This allows one to exhibit examples with $|S(x)| \asymp (1+M)e^{-M}$ for M of any size between 0 and $\log\log x$.

---

[1] One can show that this equals $\prod_{k\geq 1}(1-\frac{1-\kappa}{k})e^{\frac{1-\kappa}{k}}$ in analogy to the Euler-Mascheroni constant itself.

HalBestPoss

2.6.4. Halász's Theorem is close to best possible for all f

Halász's Theorem states that

$$\frac{1}{x}\Big|\sum_{n\le x} f(n)\Big| \ll (1+M(x,\log x))e^{-M(x,\log x)}.$$

We would like to show that this is more-or-less "best-possible" for all f and x in that there exists z "close" to x for which

LowerBdConj

$$\frac{1}{z}\Big|\sum_{n\le z} f(n)\Big| \gg e^{-M_f(z,\log z)}, \tag{2.6.3}$$

or something like that. If we replace $M(z)$ by $M(x)$ in this lower bound then it is not difficult to prove this sort of thing.

Theorem 2.6.2. *Suppose that $|f(n)|\le 1$ for all n. Let $M=M(x)=M_f(x,T)$ and select t_1 so that $|F(c_0+it_1)|=e^{-M}\log x$ where $c_0=1+\frac{1}{\log x}$. There exists y in the range $x^L\le y\le x^U$ where $L=e^{-U}=e^{-M}/4|c_0+it_1|$, for which*

$$\left|\sum_{n\le y} f(n)\right| \ge \frac{e^{-M}y}{2|c_0+it_1|}.$$

Proof. Suppose that the theorem is false. Now

$$F(c_0+it_1)=(c_0+it_1)\int_1^\infty \frac{s_f(y)}{y^{c_0}}dy.$$

where, as usual, $s_f(y):=(1/y^{1+it_1})\sum_{n\le y} f(n)$. Therefore

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{e^{-M}\log x}{|c_0+it_1|} &\le \int_1^\infty \frac{|s_f(y)|}{y^{c_0}}dy < \int_1^{x^L}\frac{1}{y^{c_0}}dy+\int_{x^L}^{x^U}\frac{2L}{y^{c_0}}dy+\int_{x^U}^\infty \frac{1}{y^{c_0}}dy\\ &\le L\log x+2L(e^{-L}-e^{-U})\log x+e^{-U}\log x < \frac{e^{-M}\log x}{|c_0+it_1|},\end{aligned}$$

a contradiction. □

In fact (2.6.3) is false, as the example of $f(n)=0$ for all $n\ge 1$ shows. A less extreme example is given by $f=\mu$: we will show (see chapter ??) that $(1/x)\sum_{n\le x}\mu(n)\ll_A 1/(\log x)^A$ for any fixed $A>0$ while $e^{-M_\mu(x,\log x)}\asymp 1/(\log x)^2$. Another important example is given by $f=\chi$, a non-principal Dirichlet character (see chapter ??). We will show that $(1/x)\sum_{n\le x}\chi(n)\ll_A 1/(\log x)^A$ for any fixed $A>0$ while $e^{-M_\chi(x,\log x)}\asymp 1/\log x$.

We might revise our guess to state that (2.6.3) holds if $e^{-M_f(x,\log x)}\gg 1/(\log x)^{1-\epsilon}$. We will focus on the case in which $t_1=t_f(x,\log x)=0$.

Another extraordinary example is given by the y-smooth numbers: Let $f(p)=1$ for $p\le y:=x^{e^{-M}}$ and $f(p)=0$ thereafter. Then $(1/z)\sum_{n\le z} f(n)=1/u^{u+o(u)}$ for $z=y^u$. On the other hand $e^{-M_f(z,\log z)}\asymp 1/u$, so that (2.6.3) can only be satisfied if $u\ll 1$. That is, given x, the closest z for which (2.6.3) holds, satisfies $z=x^{O(e^{-M})}$. We can prove that something similar to this does always hold for non-negative f:

LBdL

THEOREM 2.6.3. *Suppose that $0 \le f(n) \le 1$ for all n, so that $t_f(x,T) = 0$. Write $M = M(x) = M_f(x,T)$. If $c = e^{-C} > 0$ is sufficiently small then there exists y in the range $x^{ce^{-M(x)}} \le y \le x^{\log((1+M(x))/c)}$ for which*

$$\frac{1}{y}\sum_{n\le y} f(n) \gg \frac{e^{-M_f(y,T)}}{M_f(x,T)+C}.$$

PROOF. By (TruncRight 2.1.3) we have

$$e^{-M}\log x \asymp \sum_{n\ge 1}\frac{f(n)}{n^{c_0}} = c_0\int_1^\infty \frac{s_f(y)}{y^{c_0}}dy.$$

where, as usual, $s_f(y) := (1/y)\sum_{n\le y} f(n)$, and $c_0 = 1 + \frac{1}{\log x}$. If $y > x$ then

$$s_f(y) \ll (1+M(y))e^{-M(y)} \ll (1+M(x))e^{-M(x)},$$

by Halász's Theorem and as $M(.)$ is increasing (exercise compare2Ms 2.3.3). Therefore

$$\int_{x^B}^\infty \frac{s_f(y)}{y^{c_0}}dy \ll (1+M(x))e^{-M(x)}\int_{x^B}^\infty \frac{dy}{y^{c_0}} \ll ce^{-M}\log x,$$

where $B := \log((1+M)/c)$. Moreover, since $|s_f(y)| \le 1$, we have

$$\int_1^{x^{ce^{-M}}} \frac{s_f}{y^{c_0}}dy \le \int_1^{x^{ce^{-M}}} \frac{dy}{y} \ll ce^{-M}\log x.$$

Combining the three estimates so far obtained, we deduce that

$$\int_{x^{ce^{-M}}}^{x^B} \frac{s_f(y)}{y^{c_0}}dy \gg e^{-M}\log x.$$

Now suppose that $s_f(y) \le ce^{-M(y)}/(M(x)+C)$ for all $y,\ x^{ce^{-M}} \le y \le x^B$.

Since $f(n) \ge 0$ for all n, we can improve the result of exercise compare2Ms 2.3.3 to: If $x \ge y$ then

$$0 \le M(x) - M(y) \le \log\Big(\frac{\log x}{\log y}\Big) + o(1).$$

Hence if $y \le x$ then $e^{-M(y)} \ll e^{-M}\frac{\log x}{\log y}$, so that

$$\int_{x^{ce^{-M}}}^{x} \frac{s_f(y)}{y^{c_0}}dy \ll \frac{ce^{-M}}{M+C}\int_{x^{ce^{-M}}}^{x} \frac{1}{y^{c_0}}\frac{\log x}{\log y}dy = ce^{-M}\log x.$$

On the other hand, if $y \ge x$ then $e^{-M(y)} \le e^{-M}$, so that

$$\int_x^{x^B} \frac{s_f(y)}{y^{c_0}}dy \le \frac{ce^{-M}}{M+C}\int_x^{x^B} \frac{1}{y^{c_0}}dy \ll ce^{-M}\log x.$$

Combining these estimates yields a contradiction if c is sufficiently small. □

CHAPTER 2.7

Consequences of the proof of Halász's theorem

ch:Usingt_f

In this section we use the proof of Halász's theorem to find other results about mean values of multiplicative functions, saving the proofs to section ch:PfsConseqs 2.8. Important constants in this theory are

$$\lambda := 1 - \frac{2}{\pi} \; = \; 0.36338\ldots \quad \text{and} \quad \lambda_{\geq 0} := 1 - \frac{1}{\pi} \; = \; .68169\ldots$$

(see section sec:examples 2.6.1 to understand how these arise).

2.7.1. Rotating f

Let $t_1 = t_f(x, T)$. In Corollary cor:Compare 2.1.11 we saw that if $T \to \infty$ then

TwistCompare

$$\sum_{n \leq x} f(n) \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{x^{it_1}}{1 + it_1} \sum_{n \leq x} \frac{f(n)}{n^{it_1}}, \tag{2.7.1}$$

differ by only $o(x)$. We improve this as follows.

Recentering

Corollary 2.7.1. *Suppose that $|\Lambda_f(n)| \leq \Lambda(n)$ for all n and select $t_1 \in \mathbb{R}$ with $|t_1| \leq \log x$ for which $|F(c_0 + it_1)|$ is maximized.. Then*

$$\sum_{n \leq x} f(n) = \frac{x^{it_1}}{1 + it_1} \sum_{n \leq x} \frac{f(n)}{n^{it_1}}, +O\left(x \frac{(\log \log x)^{1+2\lambda}}{(\log x)^{\lambda}} \right)$$

If $0 \leq f(n) \leq 1$ for all n then we can replace λ with $\lambda_{\geq 0}$.

We will show that these results are best possible (in that the exponents λ and $\lambda_{\geq 0}$ cannot be improved).

This leads to an improved hybrid bound:

UBdt

Theorem 2.7.2. *Suppose that $f(n)$ is a multiplicative function with $|f(n)| \leq 1$ for all n. Let $t_1 = t_f(x, \log x)$ and $M_f = M_f(x, \log x)$. Then*

HalHybrid

$$\frac{1}{x} \Big| \sum_{n \leq x} f(n) \Big| \ll \frac{(1 + M_f) e^{-M_f}}{1 + |t_1|} + \frac{(\log \log x)^2}{(\log x)^{\lambda}}. \tag{2.7.2}$$

2.7.2. Multiplicative functions in short intervals

We are interested in the mean value of a multiplicative function in a short interval $[x, x+z)$ with z as small as possible.

ShortHal

Theorem 2.7.3 (Halász's Theorem for intervals). *Let f be a multiplicative function with $|\Lambda_f(n)| \leq \kappa \Lambda(n)$ for all n. Given x and $0 < \delta < \frac{1}{4}$, we have*

$$\sum_{x < n \leq x + x^{1-\delta}} f(n) \ll \frac{x^{1-\delta}}{\log x} \left(\int_{1/\log x}^{1} \Big(\max_{|t| \leq x^{\delta} (\log x)^{\kappa}} \Big| F(1 + \sigma + it) \Big| \Big) \frac{d\sigma}{\sigma} + (\delta \log x)^{\kappa} + \log \log x \right).$$

This leads us to the following consequence

ShortHal2

Corollary 2.7.4. *Let f be a multiplicative function with $|\Lambda_f(n)| \le \kappa\Lambda(n)$ for all n. Given x and $0<\delta<\frac14$, we have*

$$\sum_{x<n\le x+x^{1-\delta}} f(n) \ll \frac{x^{1-\delta}}{\log x}\left((1+M_\delta)e^{-M_\delta}(\log x)^\kappa + (\delta\log x)^\kappa + \log\log x\right).$$

where

$$\max_{|t|\le x^\delta(\log x)^\kappa} \left|F(c_0+it)\right| =: e^{-M_\delta}(\log x)^\kappa.$$

Later we will deduce a weak form of Hoheisel's theorem on primes in short intervals:

Hoheisel

$$\sum_{x<n\le x+x^{1-\delta}} \Lambda(n) = (1+O(\delta(\log(1/\delta))^3))x^{1-\delta}. \tag{2.7.3}$$

In other words there exists a constant $\Delta>0$ such that every interval $(x, x+x^{1-\Delta}]$ contains the expected number primes, up to a (multiplicative) constant.

2.7.3. Lipschitz estimates

We are also interested in bounding how much the mean value of a multiplicative function can vary in short (multiplicative) intervals. The example $f(n)=n^{it_1}$ in Corollary 2.7.1 shows that the mean value tends to rotate with x, by a factor of x^{it_1}, which suggests renormalizing by dividing out by this. Therefore we consider the behaviour of

$$s_f(x) := \frac{1}{x^{1+it_1}}\sum_{n\le x} f(n).$$

We are interested in the finding *the Lipschitz constant* $\lambda(f)$, which is the maximum constant ℓ such that if $0\le\theta\le1$ then

$$s_f(x) - s_f(x^{1-\theta}) \ll \left(\theta + \frac{1}{\log x}\right)^{\ell+o(1)}.$$

LipThm

Theorem 2.7.5. *If $|\Lambda_f(n)|\le\Lambda(n)$ for all n then $\lambda(f)\ge 1-\frac{2}{\pi}$; that is*

$$s_f(x) - s_f(x^{1-\theta}) \ll \theta^\lambda \log\frac{1}{\theta} + \frac{(\log\log x)^2}{(\log x)^\lambda}.$$

Moreover there exists such an f, real-valued, for which $\lambda(f)=\lambda$.
If $0\le f(n)\le 1$ for all n then $\lambda(f)\ge\lambda_{\ge0}$. Moreover there exists such an f for which $\lambda(f)=\lambda_{\ge0}$.

If $t_1\ne0$ then the mean value of f at x and at x/w may point in different directions, so we cannot, in general, hope for a non-trivial Lipschitz estimate involving only the mean value. However, one deduces from Theorem 2.7.5 a Lipschitz estimate for the absolute values of the mean values:

LipAbsMean

$$\left|\left|\frac1x\sum_{n\le x} f(n)\right| - \left|\frac{1}{(x/w)}\sum_{n\le x/w} f(n)\right|\right| \ll \theta^\lambda\log\frac1\theta + \frac{(\log\log x)^{1+2\lambda}}{(\log x)^\lambda}. \tag{2.7.4}$$

where $w=x^\theta$.

EXERCISE 2.7.1. Deduce that if $f(n) \in \mathbb{R}$ for all n, and $w = x^\theta$, then

$$\left| \frac{1}{x} \sum_{n \le x} f(n) - \frac{1}{x/w} \sum_{n \le x/w} f(n) \right| \ll \theta^\lambda \log \frac{1}{\theta} + \frac{(\log\log x)^{1+2\lambda}}{(\log x)^\lambda}.$$

(The difficulty herein stems from the fact that $t_f(x, \log x)$ is not necessarily 0.) Improve this if $f(n) \ge 0$ for all n.s

2.7.4. The structure of mean values (revisited)

In section 1.5 we noted that mean values of multiplicative functions are either given by

• Euler products, for example the integers up to x coprime to a given integer m. In this case $f(p) = 1$ on the large primes p; *or*

• Solutions to integral delay equations, for example the number of y-smooth integers up to x. In this case $f(p) = 1$ on the small primes p.

In Theorem 1.5.1 we noted that if the mean value of f is large then we can write f as the product of two multiplicative functions, one supported on small primes, the other on the large primes, and the mean value of f is the product of the other two mean values. We now prove Theorem 1.5.1 with a much better error term. We let f_-, f_+ be multiplicative functions such that

$$f_-(p^k) = \begin{cases} f(p^k)/(p^k)^{it_1} & \text{if } p \le z \\ 1 & \text{if } p > z \end{cases} \quad \text{and} \quad f_+(p^k) = \begin{cases} (p^k)^{it_1} & \text{if } p \le z \\ f(p^k) & \text{if } p > z \end{cases},$$

so that $f = f_- f_+$.

StrucThm

THEOREM 2.7.6 (Structure Theorem). *Let f be a multiplicative function with $|\Lambda_f(n)| \le \Lambda(n)$ for all n. Given $z = x^\theta$, $1 \le z \le x$ we have*

$$\frac{1}{x} \sum_{n \le x} f(n) = \frac{1}{x} \sum_{n \le x} f_-(n) \cdot \frac{1}{x} \sum_{n \le x} f_+(n) + O\left(\theta^\lambda \log \frac{1}{\theta} + \frac{(\log\log x)^{1+2\lambda}}{(\log x)^\lambda}. \right)$$

EXERCISE 2.7.1. Show that, in the structure theorem, we might have written

$$\frac{1}{x} \sum_{n \le x} f(n) = \frac{x^{it_1}}{1+it_1} \cdot \frac{1}{x} \sum_{n \le x} f_-(n) \cdot \frac{1}{x} \sum_{n \le x} f_*(n) + O\left(\theta^\lambda \log \frac{1}{\theta} + \frac{(\log\log x)^{1+2\lambda}}{(\log x)^\lambda}. \right)$$

where $f_*(p^k) = 1$ if $p \le z$, and $= f(p^k)/(p^k)^{it_1}$ if $p > z$.

It is not clear what is the best possible error term. In the example for which $f(p) = 0$ if $z^{1/2} < p \le z$ or $x/z^{1/2} < p \le x$, and $f(p) = 1$ otherwise, we have $0 \le f(n) \le 1$ for all n: In this case the mean of f_- is a fairly straightforward sieve problem (see exercise below), and equals $1/2 + O(\theta^2)$. On the other hand the mean of f_+ can be obtained as

$$\frac{1}{x} \sum_{n \le x} f_+(n) = 1 - \frac{1}{x} \sum_{x/z^{1/2} < p \le x} \left[\frac{x}{p} \right] = 1 + \log(1 - \theta/2) + o(1) = 1 - \theta/2 + O(\theta^2).$$

Finally $f = f_- + f_+ - 1$ since no integer up to x is divisible by primes from the two classes with $f(p) = -1$, and so f has mean value $1/2 - \theta/2 + O(\theta^2)$. In this case, $t_1 = 0$ and so we have

$$\text{mean}(f) - \text{mean}(f_-) \cdot \text{mean}(f_+) = -\theta/4 + O(\theta^2),$$

so the exponent in the structure theorem must be ≤ 1.

A more extreme example is given by $f(p) = -1$ if $z^\theta < p \leq z$ or $x/z^\theta < p \leq x$, and $f(p) = 1$ otherwise. By analogous arguments we find that the mean values of f, f_- and f_+ are therefore $-\theta^2 + O(\theta^4), \theta^2 + O(\theta^4)$ and $1 + O(\theta^2)$, respectively, so that

$$\text{mean}(f) = -\text{mean}(f_-) \cdot \text{mean}(f_+)(1 + O(\theta^2)).$$

Finally the mean-value of the two f_-'s are proved using inclusion-exclusion as follows.

EXERCISE 2.7.2. (a) Prove that if $m \geq 1$ then

SuperStructure1

$$\sum_{\substack{d|n \\ \omega(d)\leq 2k}} (-m)^{\omega(d)} \geq (1-m)^{\omega(n)} \leq \sum_{\substack{d|n \\ \omega(d)\leq 2k+1}} (-m)^{\omega(d)} \tag{2.7.5}$$

for all integers $k \geq 0$, where $\omega(r) = \sum_{p|r} 1$.
(b) Apply this with $m = 1$ and 2 in our examples, to estimate $(1/x)\sum_{n\leq x} f_-(n)$ with an error term $O(e^{-1/\theta})$.

Let $f = d_\kappa$ where $\kappa \neq 0, -1, \ldots$ and $u = 1/\theta$. Certainly, if $\text{Re}(\kappa) > 0$ then $t_1(f) = 0$. Proposition GenFundLem 1.4.7 tells us that

$$\frac{1}{x}\sum_{n\leq x} f_-(n) \sim \mathcal{P}(d_\kappa; z).$$

and Selberg's estimate (from section SDex 2.6.2) implies that

$$\frac{1}{x}\sum_{n\leq x} f(n) \sim \frac{e^{\gamma(1-\kappa)}}{\Gamma(\kappa)}\mathcal{P}(d_\kappa; x).$$

Combining these two estimates with the Structure theorem implies that, in a certain range for θ and κ, we have

$$\frac{1}{x}\sum_{n\leq x} f_+(n) \sim \frac{e^{\gamma(1-\kappa)}}{\Gamma(\kappa)}\theta^\kappa.$$

sec:TwoSimpleRepuls

2.7.5. Two repulsion results

Halász's Theorem gives an upper bound for the mean value of f in terms of an integral of $|F(c_0 + it)|$ as t varies over the real numbers $t \in [-T, T]$. The Corollary showed that this can be bounded in terms of the largest value that $|F(c_0 + it)|$ takes in the range, say at t_1. It turns out that in other results we also use the second largest value of $|F(c_0 + it)|$, at least when, say, $|t - t_1| \geq 1$. We explore this spectrum of large values in this subsection. Upper bounds for $F(c_0 + it_k)$ are equivalent to lower bounds on $\mathbb{D}(f(n), n^{it_k}, x)$ for each k, and we discuss the "best possible" such results.

kRepulsion

PROPOSITION 2.7.7. *For any multiplicative function f with values inside the unit circle, let $t_1, t_2, \ldots, t_k \in [-T_0, T_0]$ be values with each $|t_i - t_j| \gg 1$, and the $\mathbb{D}(f(n), n^{it_k}, x)$ placed in increasing order. Then*

$$\mathbb{D}(f(n), n^{it_k}, x)^2 \geq \left(1 - \frac{1}{\sqrt{k}}\right)\log\log x + O_k(1).$$

This is equivalent to

$$\left|F\left(1+\frac{1}{\log x}+it_k\right)\right| \ll (\log x)^{\frac{1}{\sqrt{k}}}$$

Proof. We begin, by Cauchying the sum,

$$\begin{aligned}\left(\sum_{p\le x}\frac{1}{p}\left|\frac{1}{k}\sum_{j=1}^{k}p^{it_j}\right|\right)^2 &\le \sum_{p\le x}\frac{1}{p}\cdot\left(\frac{1}{k}\sum_{p\le x}\frac{1}{p}+\frac{1}{k^2}\sum_{1\le i\ne j\le k}\sum_{p\le x}\frac{\mathrm{Re}(p^{i(t_i-t_j)})}{p}\right)\\ &\le (\log\log x+O(1))\left(\frac{1}{k}\log\log x+O\left(1\right)\right)\end{aligned}$$

taking $\alpha=t_i-t_j$ by (EquivUpperBounds 2.1.6), and noting that $1\ll|\alpha|\ll(\log x)^2$. Now, since $\mathrm{Re}(f(p)\frac{1}{k}\sum_{j=1}^{k}p^{-it_j})\le|\frac{1}{k}\sum_{j=1}^{k}p^{it_j}|$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbb{D}(f(n),n^{it_k},x)^2 \ge \frac{1}{k}\sum_{j=1}^{k}\mathbb{D}(f(n),n^{it_j},x)^2 &= \sum_{p\le x}\frac{1-\mathrm{Re}(f(p)\frac{1}{k}\sum_{j=1}^{k}p^{-it_j})}{p}\\ &\ge \log\log x+O(1)-\sum_{p\le x}\frac{1}{p}\left|\frac{1}{k}\sum_{j=1}^{k}p^{it_j}\right|\\ &\ge \left(1-\frac{1}{\sqrt{k}}\right)\log\log x+O(1)\end{aligned}$$

by the first bound in this proof. □

Corollary cor:repulsive 2.1.7 gives a lower bound on $\mathbb{D}(f,n^{it_j};x)^2$, which we now improve to the "best possible" general lower bound:

tRepulsion

Lemma 2.7.8. *For any multiplicative function f with values inside the unit circle, and any real numbers t_1,t_2 with $|t_1-t_2|\le\log x$ we have*

$$\max_{j=1,2}\ \mathbb{D}(f,n^{it_j};x)^2 \ge \left(1-\frac{2}{\pi}\right)\cdot\begin{cases}\log(|t_1-t_2|\log x) & \text{if } |t_1-t_2|\le 1\\ \log\log x & \text{if } |t_1-t_2|>1\end{cases}+O(1).$$

This is equivalent to

$$\min_{j=1,2}\left|F\left(1+\frac{1}{\log x}+it_j\right)\right| \ll (\min\{1,|t_1-t_2|\}\log x)^{\frac{2}{\pi}}$$

If $0\le f(n)\le 1$ for all n then we can replace $\frac{2}{\pi}$ here by $\frac{1}{\pi}$.

Proof. We may assume $\beta:=|t_1-t_2|/2>1/\log x$, else the result is trivial. Then

$$\begin{aligned}\max_{j=1,2}\ \mathbb{D}(f,n^{it_j};x)^2 \ge \frac{1}{2}\sum_{j=1}^{2}\ \mathbb{D}(f,n^{it_j};x)^2 &= \sum_{p\le x}\frac{1-\mathrm{Re}\ f(p)(p^{-it_1}+p^{-it_2})/2}{p}\\ &\ge \sum_{p\le x}\frac{1-|\cos(\beta\log p)|}{p}+O(1).\end{aligned}$$

since $\mathrm{Re}\ f(p)(p^{-it_1}+p^{-it_2})/2\le|f(p)||(p^{-it_1}+p^{-it_2})/2|\le 1\cdot|\cos(\beta\log p)|$.

Exercise 2.7.3. Complete the proof of the Lemma, using partial summation and the prime number theorem.

To prove the second result, for f with $0 \le f(n) \le 1$ for all n, we simply replace $|\cos(\beta \log p)|$ by $\max\{0, \cos(\beta \log p)\}$ in the proof above. $\square$

2.7.6. Exercises: Applications of the Lipschitz result

fSieve

EXERCISE 2.7.2 (Sieving f by the primes $\le z$). Let $\kappa = 1$. For given $z = x^\theta$, let $m = \prod_{p \le z} p$. Prove that for $t_1 := t_f(x, \log x)$ we have

$$\frac{1}{x}\sum_{n \le x} f(n) = \prod_{p \le z}\left(1 + \frac{f(p)}{p^{1+it_1}} + \frac{f(p)}{p^{2(1+it_1)}} + \dots\right) \cdot \frac{1}{x}\sum_{\substack{n \le x \\ (n,m)=1}} f(n)$$
$$+ O\left(\theta^\lambda \log\frac{1}{\theta} + \frac{(\log\log x)^{1+2\lambda}}{(\log x)^\lambda}.\right)$$

UseTotally

EXERCISE 2.7.4. Given f, let g to be the totally multiplicative function with $g(p) = f(p)$ for all primes p. Prove that

$$\sum_{n \le x} f(n) = \frac{\mathcal{P}(f(n)/n^{it}, \infty)}{\mathcal{P}(g(n)/n^{it}, \infty)} \sum_{n \le x} g(n) + O\left(x \frac{\log\log x}{(\log x)^\lambda}\right)$$

where $t = t_f(x, \log x) = t_g(x, \log x)$. (Hint: Write $f = g * h$ and bound the size of $h(p^k)$.)

ex:ConvolutionId

EXERCISE 2.7.5. Use (ConvPrecise 1.5.2) and Theorem LipThm 2.7.5 to prove that

$$\frac{s(u)}{1 + it_1} = \frac{1}{u}\int_0^u s(u-t)\chi(t)dt + O\left(\frac{1}{(\log x)^{\lambda + o(1)}}\right)$$

EXERCISE 2.7.6. Suppose that $2 \le w = x^\theta \le \sqrt{x}$ then

$$\frac{1}{\log w}\sum_{x/w \le n \le x} \frac{f(n)}{n} = (1 + it) \cdot \frac{1 - w^{-it}}{it \log w} \cdot \frac{1}{x}\sum_{n \le x} f(n) + O\left(\frac{\log(1/\theta)}{\theta^{1-\lambda}\log x}\right).$$

EXERCISE 2.7.7. In this exercise we determine weighted means of $f(n)$:

(i) Show that if $\sigma > 1$ and $(\sigma - 1)\log x \to \infty$ then

$$\sum_{n \le x} \frac{f(n)}{n^\sigma} \Bigg/ \sum_{n \le x} \frac{1}{n^\sigma} \sim \prod_{p \text{ prime}} \left(1 - \frac{1}{p^\sigma}\right)\left(1 + \frac{f(p)}{p^\sigma} + \frac{f(p^2)}{p^{2\sigma}} + \dots\right).$$

(ii) Show that if $\sigma = 1 + A/\log x$ with A bounded then

$$\sum_{n \le x} \frac{f(n)}{n^\sigma} \Bigg/ \sum_{n \le x} \frac{1}{n^\sigma} = \int_0^1 e^{-At}s(t)dt \Bigg/ \int_0^1 e^{-At}dt + O\left(\frac{A+1}{\log x}\right).$$

OtherMeans

(iii) Show that if $0 < \sigma < 1$ and $(1 - \sigma)\log x \to \infty$ then

$$\sum_{n \le x} \frac{f(n)}{n^\sigma} \Bigg/ \sum_{n \le x} \frac{1}{n^\sigma} = c(\sigma, t_1)\ \frac{S(x)}{x} + O\left(\frac{1}{((1-\sigma)\log x)^{\lambda + o(1)}}\right).$$

where $c(\sigma, t) := \frac{(1+it)(1-\sigma)}{1+it-\sigma}$ (in particular $c(\sigma, 0) = 1$).

CHAPTER 2.8

Proofs of consequences of the proof of Halász's theorem

ch:PfsConseqs

In this chapter we prove the results stated in section ch:Usingt_f 2.7. To begin with we need to clarify the use of the maximum modulus principle.

2.8.1. The maximum modulus principle

We will be considering quantities like $\max |F(1+\sigma+it)|$ for $\sigma \geq \sigma_0$ and $|t| \leq T$ for some $\sigma_0 > 0$, and $T \geq 1$. By the maximum modulus principle we know that the maximum occurs on a boundary. We wish to show that the maximum more-or-less occurs on the boundary with $\sigma = \sigma_0$. What about the other possibilities?

If the maximum occurs with $\sigma \geq 1$ then $|F(1+\sigma+it)| \leq \zeta(1+\sigma)^\kappa \leq \zeta(2)^\kappa \ll_\kappa 1$.

Now suppose that the maximum occurs with $t = T$ (the analogous proof works if $t = -T$), that is $|F(1+\sigma+iT)|$, with $\sigma_0 < \sigma < 1$. We consider $F(s_\tau)$ at $s_\tau := 1+\sigma_0+i(T-\tau)$ where $0 \leq \tau \leq \sigma$, so that $|s_\tau - (1+\sigma+iT)| \leq 2\sigma$ and note that

$$\log\left(\frac{F(s_\tau)}{F(1+\sigma+iT)}\right) = \sum_{n\leq e^{1/\sigma}} \frac{\Lambda_f(n)}{n^{s_\tau}\log n}\left(1-\frac{1}{n^{\sigma-\sigma_0+i\tau}}\right) - \sum_{n>e^{1/\sigma}} \frac{\Lambda_f(n)}{n^{1+\sigma+iT}\log n}$$
$$+ \sum_{n>e^{1/\sigma}} \frac{\Lambda_f(n)}{n^{1+\sigma_0+i(T-\tau)}\log n}.$$

The first and second sums are, in absolute value,

$$\ll \sigma \sum_{n\leq e^{1/\sigma}} \frac{\Lambda(n)}{n} + \sum_{n>e^{1/\sigma}} \frac{\Lambda(n)}{n^{1+\sigma}\log n} \ll 1.$$

The average of the third sum, averaged over $0 \leq \tau \leq \sigma$, is, in absolute value,

$$\ll \sum_{n>e^{1/\sigma}} \frac{\Lambda(n)}{n\log n}\left|\frac{1}{\sigma}\int_{\tau=0}^{\sigma} n^{i\tau} d\tau\right| \ll \frac{1}{\sigma}\sum_{n>e^{1/\sigma}} \frac{\Lambda(n)}{n(\log n)^2} \ll 1.$$

Combining these estimates implies that there exists s_τ on the line $\mathrm{Re}(s) = 1+\sigma_0$ for which

$$|F(s_\tau)| \gg |F(1+\sigma+iT)|.$$

The same averaging argument with $\sigma = 1$ implies that there exists $t \in [-1,1]$ for which $|F(1+\sigma_0+it)| \gg 1$. Combining all this, we deduce that

MaxModLeft

$$\max_{\substack{\sigma\geq\sigma_0\\ |t|\leq T}} |F(1+\sigma+it)| \ll \max_{|t|\leq T} |F(1+\sigma_0+it)|, \tag{2.8.1}$$

where the implicit constant depends only on κ.

sec:Nottoomany

2.8.2. Repulsion revisited

We revisit the results of section sec:TwoSimpleRepuls 2.7.5, putting them into a slightly more complicated context, showing that $F(c_0+it)$ can only be large in a few rare intervals.

LargeF PROPOSITION 2.8.1. *Fix $\theta, 0<\epsilon<1$ and $0<\rho\leq \epsilon^2/2$. There are at most $1/\rho$ disjoint intervals $[t_j-\delta, t_j+\delta]\subset[-(\log x)^\kappa, (\log x)^\kappa]$ with $\delta\geq 1/(\log x)^\rho$ and $|F(c_0+it_j)|\geq (\log x)^{\epsilon\kappa}$.*

Rep1 PROPOSITION 2.8.2. *If $t_1,\dots,t_\ell\in\mathbb{R}$ satisfy $|t_j|\leq(\log x)^\kappa$, and $|t_j-t_k|\geq 1/(\log x)^\rho$, with $0\leq\rho\leq 1$, for all $j\neq k$ then*

$$\sum_{j=1}^{\ell}\log|F(1+1/\log x+it_j)|\leq \kappa(\ell+\ell(\ell-1)\rho)^{1/2}\log\log x+O_\ell(\log\log\log x).$$

If, in addition, we have $\sigma_1,\dots,\sigma_\ell\geq 1+1/\log x$ then we also have

$$\sum_{j=1}^{\ell}\log|F(\sigma_j+it_j)|\leq \kappa(\ell+\ell(\ell-1)\rho)^{1/2}\log\log x+O_\ell(\log\log\log x).$$

PROOF. We began by observing that since each $|\Lambda_f(n)|\leq\kappa\Lambda(n)$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{j=1}^{\ell}\log|F(1+1/\log x+it_j)| &= \sum_{n\geq 2}\frac{1}{n^{1+1/\log x}\log n}\mathrm{Re}\left(\Lambda_f(n)\sum_{j=1}^{\ell}n^{-it_j}\right)\\ &\leq \kappa\sum_{n\geq 2}\frac{\Lambda(n)}{n^{1+1/\log x}\log n}\Big|\sum_{j=1}^{\ell}n^{-it_j}\Big|.\end{aligned}$$

By Cauchy-Schwarz the square of this sum is

$$\leq \sum_{n\geq 2}\frac{\Lambda(n)}{n^{1+1/\log x}\log n}\cdot\sum_{n\geq 2}\frac{\Lambda(n)}{n^{1+1/\log x}\log n}\Big|\sum_{j=1}^{\ell}n^{-it_j}\Big|^2.$$

The first factor above is $\log\log x+O(1)$. Expanding out the sum over j, the second factor on the right hand side is

$$\sum_{j,k=1}^{\ell}\log|\zeta(1+1/\log x+i(t_j-t_k))|\leq \ell\log\log x+\ell(\ell-1)\rho\log\log x+O(\ell^2\log\log\log x),$$

where the first term comes from the $j=k$ terms, and the second term from the bound

$$\log|\zeta(1+1/\log x+i(t_j-t_k))|\leq\rho\log\log x+O(\log\log\log x)$$

whenever $j\neq k$, since $2(\log x)^\kappa\geq|t_j-t_k|\geq 1/(\log x)^\rho$. The first part of the Proposition follows.

To prove the second part we follow the analogous proof, and writing $u_j=\sigma_j-1-1/\log x$, we have to bound $|\sum_{j=1}^{\ell}n^{-(u_j+it_j)}|^2$, averaged suitable over n. The bounds on ζ, used to bound this, only get stronger as the u_j get larger. $\square$

DEDUCTION OF PROPOSITION LargeF 2.8.1. If this is false then we apply Proposition Rep1 2.8.2 for some $\ell>1/\rho$ so that

$$\epsilon\leq\frac{1}{\ell}\sum_{j=1}^{\ell}\frac{\log|F(1+1/\log x+it_j)|}{\kappa\log\log x}\leq\left(\rho+\frac{1-\rho}{\ell}\right)^{1/2}+O_\ell\left(\frac{\log\log\log x}{\log\log x}\right)<(2\rho-\rho^2)^{1/2}+o(1)<\epsilon,$$

if x is sufficiently large, a contradiction. $\square$

We are more precise than Proposition Rep1 2.8.2 in the special case $\ell = 2$:

1-2/Pi **Proposition 2.8.3.** *Let f be a multiplicative function with $|\Lambda_f(n)| \le \kappa\Lambda(n)$ for all n. Select $t_1 \in \mathbb{R}$ with $|t_1| \le (\log x)^\kappa$ which maximizes $|F(1+1/\log x + it_1)|$. If $t \in \mathbb{R}$ satisfies $|t| \le (\log x)^\kappa$ then*

$$\frac{|F(1+1/\log x+it)|}{(\log x)^\kappa} \ll \begin{cases} \frac{1}{(1+|t-t_1|\log x)^{\kappa(1-\frac{2}{\pi})}} & \text{if } |t-t_1| \le 1; \\ \left(\frac{(\log|t-t_1|)^2}{\log x}\right)^{\kappa(1-\frac{2}{\pi})} & \text{if } |t-t_1| > 1. \end{cases}$$

If $f(n) \ge 0$ for all n then we obtain the analogous result with $\frac{1}{\pi}$ in place of $\frac{2}{\pi}$.

There are such multiplicative functions f for which these bounds are attained.

Proof. Proceeding as in the proof of Proposition Rep1 2.8.2, we have

$$\log|F(1+1/\log x+it_2)| \le \kappa \sum_{n\ge 2} \frac{\Lambda(n)}{n^{1+1/\log x}\log n}|\cos(\tau\log n)|,$$

where $\tau = |t-t_1|/2$. Using the prime number theorem in the form $\psi(x) = x + O(x/\log x)$, this sum is $\log\log x + O(1)$ if $\tau \le 1/\log x$ and

$$= \log(1/\tau) + \frac{2}{\pi}\log(\tau\log x) + O(1)$$

for $1/\log x < \tau \le 1$, since $\int_0^1 |\cos(2\pi t)|dt = 2/\pi$. If $\tau > 1$ then the result follows from a strong form of the prime number theorem. Notice that we get equality for the multiplicative function f_1 if $t_2 = -t_1$ and $f_1(n) = \kappa\,\mathrm{sign}(\cos(t_1\log p))$ whenever n is a prime power.

If $f(n) \ge 0$ for all n, then $t_1 = 0$. At any other t, we have $F(c_0+it) = \overline{F(c_0-it)}$ so each of their logs

$$\le \kappa \sum_{n\ge 2} \frac{\Lambda(n)\max\{0,\cos(t\log n)\}}{n^{1+1/\log x}\log n}$$

and we get the same results, with $\int_0^1 \max\{0,\cos(2\pi t)\}dt = \frac{1}{\pi}$ replacing $\frac{2}{\pi}$. Here we get equality for the multiplicative function f_2 if $f_2(n) := (1+f_1(n))/2$ whenever n is a prime power. $\square$

2.8.3. Short interval results for multiplicative functions in the unit circle

The multiplicative function n^{it} has mean value $x^{it}/(1+it)$ up to x, so to study the change in the mean value we should look at

$$\frac{1}{x^{1+it_1}}\sum_{n\le x} f(n)$$

where t_1 is chosen with $|t_1| \le (\log x)^\kappa$ to maximize $|F(c_0+it_1)|$. For any z, $1 \le z \le \sqrt{x}$ we wish to bound

$$\frac{1}{x^{1+it_1}}\sum_{n\le x} f(n) - \frac{1}{(x/z)^{1+it_1}}\sum_{n\le x/z} f(n).$$

Note that t_1 depends on x, so there is no guarantee that $t_1(x) = t_1(x/z)$. However if they are very different then one can show that the mean values are $\ll$

$1/(\log x)^{\kappa(1-2/\pi)}$ by Corollary 2.5.2. To evaluate this difference let's apply Proposition 2.4.6 for x and x/z.

Proof of Theorem 2.7.5. (i) The main term, from (2.4.10), becomes, dividing through by $x^{c_0+it_1}$ and $(x/z)^{c_0+it_1}$, respectively,

$$\int_0^\eta \int_0^\eta \frac{1}{\pi i} \int_{\substack{-T\le t\le T\\ s=c_0+it}} \mathcal{S}(s-\alpha-\beta)\mathcal{L}(s+\beta)\frac{\mathcal{L}'}{\mathcal{L}}(s-\beta)\frac{\mathcal{L}'}{\mathcal{L}}(s+\beta)\frac{x^{i(t-t_1)-\alpha-\beta}}{s-\alpha-\beta}(1-z^{\alpha+\beta-i(t-t_1)})dsd\beta d\alpha.$$

We now follow the proof of Theorem 2.5.1 with $y=\max\{z,T^2\}$, and obtain three terms from

$$|1-z^{\alpha+\beta-i(t-t_1)}| \le |1-z^{i(t-t_1)}| + |1-z^{\alpha+\beta}| \ll \min\{1,|t-t_1|\log z\} + (\alpha+\beta)\log z.$$

For the first term we need to bound

$$\max_{|t|\le T} \frac{|F(c_0+it)|}{(\log x)^\kappa}\min\{1,|t-t_1|\log z\}.$$

Henceforth let $\kappa=1$. If $|t-t_1|\le 1$ then, as $\min\{1,|t-t_1|\log z\}\le (|t-t_1|\log z)^{1-2/\pi}$, Proposition 2.8.3 implies that

$$\frac{|F(c_0+it)|}{\log x}\min\{1,|t-t_1|\log z\} \le \left(\frac{\log z}{\log x}\right)^{1-2/\pi}.$$

If $|t-t_1|>1$ then, by Proposition 2.8.3,

$$\frac{|F(c_0+it)|}{\log x}\min\{1,|t-t_1|\log z\} \le \left(\frac{(\log\log x)^2}{\log x}\right)^{1-2/\pi}.$$

Let $\Delta := \max\{\log z, (\log\log x)^2\}$. Combining all this, and using the maximum modulus principle as in the proof of Corollary 2.5.2, the bound in (2.5.3) is replaced by

NB1 (2.8.2)
$$\ll \int_{\alpha=0}^1 x^{1-\alpha}\log x \int_{\sigma=1/\log x}^1 \min\left\{\left(\frac{\Delta}{\log x}\right)^{1-2/\pi}, \frac{1}{\sigma\log x}\right\}\frac{d\sigma}{\sigma}d\alpha$$
$$\ll x\left(\frac{\Delta}{\log x}\right)^{1-2/\pi}\log\left(\frac{\log x}{\Delta}\right).$$

For both the $\alpha\log z$ and $\beta\log z$ terms we use only that $|F(1+\sigma+it)|\ll 1/\sigma$. Hence the bound in (2.5.3) is replaced by

NB2 (2.8.3)
$$\ll \int_{\alpha=0}^1 x^{1-\alpha}\alpha\log z\int_{1/\log x}^1 \frac{d\sigma}{\sigma^2}d\alpha \ll x\frac{\log z}{\log x},$$

for the $\alpha\log z$ term, and by

NB3 (2.8.4)
$$\ll \int_{\alpha=0}^1 x^{1-\alpha}\int_{1/\log x}^{2/\log y}\sigma\log z\frac{d\sigma}{\sigma^2}d\alpha \ll x\frac{\log z}{\log x}\log\left(\frac{\log x}{\log y}\right)$$

for the $\beta\log z$ term. This yields the proof of the bound in (i). The example is example 2 of section ??.

To obtain (ii) we follow the same proof replacing $2/\pi$ by $1/\pi$ throughout. The example is given as example 3 of section ??. □

Proof of Theorem 2.7.6. By Corollary 2.7.1 we can assume, that $t_1 = 0$ though this is not necessary. We use the formulas in the proof of Theorem 2.5.1 to study the difference

$$\sum_{n\le x} f(n) - C_{f,z}\sum_{n\le x} f_+(n)$$

where $y = \max\{z, T^2\}$, and

$$C_{f,z} := \frac{S(c_0+it_1)}{S_+(c_0+it_1)} = \prod_{p\le z}\left(1-\frac{1}{p^{c_0}}\right)\left(1+\frac{f(p)/p^{it_1}}{p^{c_0}}+\frac{f(p^2)/p^{2it_1}}{p^{2c_0}}+\dots\right),$$

which satisfies $|C_{f,z}|\le 1$. This choice of y ensures that $\mathcal{L}=\mathcal{L}_+$ so the differences in the formulas occurs in the $\mathcal{S}$ terms. Hence in the integrand in (2.4.10) we replace $\mathcal{S}(s-\alpha-\beta)$ by

$$\mathcal{S}(s-\alpha-\beta) - C_{f,z}\mathcal{S}_+(s-\alpha-\beta), \tag{2.8.5}$$

and then one takes the absolute value of this as one follows the proof of Theorem 2.5.1, as in (2.5.1). We observe that $|w-w_+| \ll (|w|+|w_+|)\min\{1,|\log(w/w_+)|\}$ for any $w, w_+\in\mathbb{C}$, and so we wish to study, for $s = c_0+it$,

$$\begin{aligned}\log\left(\frac{S(c_0+it_1)}{\mathcal{S}(s-\alpha-\beta)}\frac{\mathcal{S}_+(s-\alpha-\beta)}{S_+(c_0+it_1)}\right) &= \sum_{n:\ P(n)\le z}\frac{(\Lambda_f(n)-n^{it_1}\Lambda(n))}{n^{c_0+it_1}\log n}\left(1-\frac{1}{n^{i(t-t_0)-\alpha-\beta}}\right)\\ &\ll_\kappa \log(1+|t-t_0|\log z) + (\alpha+\beta)\log z\end{aligned}$$

since

$$1-\frac{1}{n^{i(t-t_0)-\alpha-\beta}} = 1-\frac{1}{n^{i(t-t_0)}}+\frac{1}{n^{i(t-t_0)}}\left(1-\frac{1}{n^{-\alpha-\beta}}\right) \ll \min\{1,|t-t_0|\log n\}+(\alpha+\beta)\log n$$

for $n\le y$. Therefore the absolute value of (2.8.5) is

$$\ll (|\mathcal{S}(s-\alpha-\beta)| + |C_{f,z}\mathcal{S}_+(s-\alpha-\beta)|)\cdot(\min\{1,|t-t_0|\log z\}+(\alpha+\beta)\log z).$$

We are multiplying through by exactly the same quantity as in in the proof of Theorem 2.7.5, so we can quote (2.8.2), (2.8.3), (2.8.4) from there. Hence we have proved that

$$\frac{1}{x}\sum_{n\le x} f(n) = C_{f,z}\cdot\frac{1}{x}\sum_{n\le x} f_+(n) + O\left(\theta^{1-\frac{2}{\pi}}\log\frac{1}{\theta}+\frac{(\log\log x)^{3-4/\pi}}{(\log x)^{1-2/\pi}}\right)$$

where $z = x^\theta$. We now apply the same estimate with f replaced by f_-. To do this we note that

$$\begin{aligned}|F_-(c_0)| &= \left|\prod_{p\le z}\left(1+\frac{f(p)/p^{it_1}}{p^{c_0}}+\frac{f(p^2)/p^{2it_1}}{p^{2c_0}}+\dots\right)\prod_{z<p\le x}\left(1+\frac{1}{p^{c_0}}+\frac{1}{p^{2c_0}}+\dots\right)\right|\\ &\ge \left|\prod_{p\le x}\left(1+\frac{f(p)}{p^{c_0+it_1}}+\frac{f(p^2)}{p^{2c_0+2it_1}}+\dots\right)\right| = |F(c_0+it_1)|\end{aligned}$$

Hence we obtain

$$\frac{1}{x}\sum_{n\le x} f_-(n) = C_{f,z} + O\left(\theta^{1-\frac{2}{\pi}}\log\frac{1}{\theta}+\frac{(\log\log x)^{3-4/\pi}}{(\log x)^{1-2/\pi}}\right),$$

and the result follows, by inserting this into the previous estimate. We note that, by definition,

$$C_{f,z} = \mathcal{P}(f_-, z) + O(\theta).$$

One obtained a much stronger version of the mean value estimate for f_- in Proposition 1.4.7, in which the error term has a dependence on θ more like $e^{1/\theta}$. □

Proof of Corollary 2.7.1. If $|t_1| > (\log x)^\kappa/2$ then the contribution of the interval around $s = c_0 + it_1$ is negligible, since the $|s|$ in the denominator in the proof of Theorem 2.5.1 swamps the F in the numerator. Hence we are left to consider the contribution in an interval around t_2. By Proposition 2.8.3 we know that $|F(c_0 + it_2)| \leq 1/(\log x)^{1-2/\pi+o(1)}$, and then (being a bit more precise) the result follows exactly as in the proof of Theorem 2.5.1.

Henceforth we assume that $|t_1| \leq (\log x)^\kappa/2$. We follow the proof of Theorem 2.7.5 with $y = T^2$. The main term from (2.4.10), minus $x^{it_1}/(1+it_1)$ times the main term from (2.4.10) with $f(n)$ replaced by $f(n)/n^{it_1}$ (and altering the range of the s-integration to $t_1 - T \leq t \leq t_1 + T$), equals

$$\int_0^\eta \int_0^\eta \frac{1}{\pi i} \int_{\substack{-T\leq t\leq T\\ s=c_0+it}} \mathcal{S}(s-\alpha-\beta)\mathcal{L}(s+\beta)\frac{\mathcal{L}'}{\mathcal{L}}(s-\beta)\frac{\mathcal{L}'}{\mathcal{L}}(s+\beta)x^{s-\alpha-\beta}\left(\frac{1}{s_{\alpha,\beta}} - \frac{1}{(1+it_1)(s_{\alpha,\beta}-it_1)}\right) ds\, d\beta\, d\alpha,$$

where $s_{\alpha,\beta} = s - \alpha - \beta$. Now

$$\left|\frac{1}{s_{\alpha,\beta}} - \frac{1}{(1+it_1)(s_{\alpha,\beta}-it_1)}\right| \ll \min\{1, |t-t_1|\} + \alpha + \beta + \frac{1}{\log x},$$

and the result follows from the estimates (2.8.2), (2.8.3), (2.8.4) in the proof of Theorem 2.7.5. To obtain the result about non-negative f, we follow the same proof replacing $2/\pi$ by $1/\pi$ throughout. □

Proof of Theorem 2.7.3. We may assume $\delta > 0$ is small, else the result is trivial; and then that $\delta > 1/\log x$ else the result follows from Theorem 2.5.1. We apply Perron's formula, as in Lemma 2.4.4, at x, subtracted from the same formula at $x(1+x^{-\delta})$. We then move the contours as described in section ??, tailor the integrals as in Lemma ?? (and the error term is acceptable taking $T = x^\delta(\log x)^{\kappa+2}$), and now proceed as in the proof of Theorem 2.5.1, though with the integral multiplied through by

$$|(1+x^{-\delta})^{s-\alpha-\beta} - 1| \ll \min\{|s|x^{-\delta}, 1\}.$$

This leads to the bound (in analogy to (2.5.3))

$$\ll \int_{\alpha=0}^1 x^{1-\delta-\alpha} \int_{1/\log x}^{2/\log y} \left(\max_{|t|\leq T} |F(1+\sigma+it)| \min\left\{1, \frac{1}{|t|x^{-\delta}}\right\}\right) \frac{d\sigma}{\sigma} d\alpha. \tag{2.8.6}$$

The contribution of those σ for which the maximum of $|F(1+\sigma+it)|$ occurs with $T \geq |t| > x^\delta(\log x)^\kappa$, is

$$\ll \frac{x}{\log x} \int_{1/\log x}^1 \frac{(\log x)^\kappa}{x^\delta(\log x)^\kappa} \frac{d\sigma}{\sigma} \ll \frac{x^{1-\delta}}{\log x} \log\log x$$

since $|F(1+\sigma+it)| \ll (\log x)^\kappa$, so this establishes the main term.

Finally we need to deal with the error terms

$$\sum_{x<mn\leq x+x^{1-\delta}} s(m)\frac{\ell(n)}{n^\eta} + \int_0^\eta \sum_{x<mkn\leq x+x^{1-\delta}} s(m)\frac{\Lambda_\ell(k)}{k^\alpha}\frac{\ell(n)}{n^{\eta+\alpha}} d\alpha,$$

which come from taking the difference in (2.4.9). We will show that this is

$$\ll x^{-\delta}\left(\sum_{x<mn\le x+x^{1-\delta}} d_\kappa(m)\frac{d_\kappa(n)}{n^\eta}+\int_0^\eta \sum_{x<mkn\le x+x^{1-\delta}} d_\kappa(m)\frac{\Lambda(k)}{k^\alpha}\frac{d_\kappa(n)}{n^{\eta+\alpha}}d\alpha\right)$$

(where m and n are again restricted to those integers at which $s(.)$ and $\ell(.)$ are supported, respectively) and then the result follows from Lemma 2.4.5. To prove this we split each sum by the hyperbola method. In the second sum we might have $m,n\le x^{1/3}$, in which case the longest sum is over k in the range $(X,X+Z]$ where $X:=x/mn\ge x^{1/3}$ and $Z=Xx^{-\delta}\le X^{1-3\delta}$. Then

$$\sum_{x/mn<k\le(x+x^{1-\delta})/mn}\frac{|\Lambda_\ell(k)|}{k^\alpha}\ll\sum_{X<k\le X(1+x^{1-\delta})}\frac{\Lambda(k)}{X^\alpha}\ll x^{-\delta}\sum_{X<k\le 2X}\frac{\Lambda(k)}{X^\alpha}\ll\sum_{x/mn<k\le 2x/mn}\frac{\Lambda(k)}{k^\alpha}$$

by the Brun-Titchmarsh theorem. A similar argument works for the n-variable by similar sieve methods (with the weight $\Lambda_\kappa(n)$). For the m-variable we need that

$$\sum_{\substack{X<m\le X+X/x^\delta\\ P(m)\le y}} d_\kappa(m)\ll x^{-\delta}\sum_{\substack{X<m\le 2X\\ P(m)\le y}} d_\kappa(m).$$

This should be provable directly using some imagination. For now, in the $\kappa=1$ case, this follows if $\psi(X+X/\sqrt{Y},Y)-\psi(X,Y)\ll\psi(X,Y)/\sqrt{Y}$ for $X^{1/2}>Y\ge X^{2\delta}$, which can be deduced from [?] $\square$

Proof of Corollary 2.7.4. We apply the maximum modulus principle to $F(1+\sigma+it)$ in

$$\{1/\log x\le\sigma\le 1,\ |t|\le x^\delta\},$$

and to $F(1+\sigma+it)/(1+\sigma+it)$ in

$$\{1/\log x\le\sigma\le 1,\ x^\delta\le|t|\le x^\delta(\log x)^\kappa\},$$

so that the maximum of $|F(1+\sigma+it)|\min\left\{1,\frac{1}{|1+\sigma+it|x^{-\delta}}\right\}$ occurs on one of the boundaries. On the three boundaries $\sigma=1$, and $t=\pm x^\delta(\log x)^\kappa$ this quantity is bounded. So, the maximum either occurs in $t=\pm x^\delta$ or on the final boundary $\sigma=1/\log x$. By (2.8.1) we know that this is $\ll$ the maximum on the line $\mathrm{Re}(s)=c_0$. Combining this upper bound with $|F(1+\sigma+it)|\le\zeta(\sigma)^\kappa\ll 1/\sigma^\kappa$ in appropriate ranges, we deduce the claimed result. $\square$

CHAPTER 2.9

Small mean values

Halász's Theorem is a general tool that allows us to bound the mean value of a multiplicative function up to x, but is insensitive to mean values $\ll \log\log x/(\log x)$, as we saw in Exercise ex:4.13 2.3.1. Are there mean values this small and, if so, can we modify Halász's method to bound them more suitably?

2.9.1. Random totally multiplicative functions

Let's suppose that each $f(p)$ is an independent random variable on the unit circle. Now

$$\mathbb{E}\Big(\Big|\sum_{n\le x} f(n)\Big|^2\Big) = \sum_{n\le x}\mathbb{E}(|f(n)|^2) + \sum_{m\ne n\le x}\mathbb{E}(f(m)\overline{f(n)}).$$

which equals $[x]$, if each $\mathbb{E}(f(p)^k)=0$ for each integer $k\neq 0$ and prime p (which happens, for example, if the probability distribution for each $f(p)$ is equi-distributed on the unit circle). So we "expect" $\sum_{n\le x} f(n) \ll x^{1/2+o(1)}$, a massive amount of cancelation. If the $f(p) = -1$ or 1 with equal probability, then the right side becomes $\#\{m,n\le x : mn\in\mathbb{Z}^2\}$; so if $g=(m,n)$ we write $m=gr^2$ and $n=gs^2$ to get

$$\le \sum_{g\le x}(\sqrt{x/g})^2 = x\sum_{g\le x} 1/g = x\log x + O(1)$$

so, again we "expect" $\sum_{n\le x} f(n) \ll x^{1/2+o(1)}$.

While "most" mean values are very small (as we have just shown), those associated with arithmetic tend to be much bigger, and the challenge is to prove that there is any cancelation at all. Moreover even if we are sure that $\sum_{n\le x} f(n) \ll x^{1/2+o(1)}$ (like in the case $f=\mu$), it may still to be a big challenge to prove a much weaker bound like $\sum_{n\le x} f(n) \ll x/(\log x)^3$. Certainly Halász's Theorem will not allow us to do so directly.

.

2.9.2. When the mean value, at the primes, is close to 0

The Selberg-Delange Theorem allows us to estimate mean values of multiplicative functions f with $|f(n)|\le 1$, that average κ on the primes, for any $|\kappa|\le 1$, except when $\kappa = 0$ or -1. In this section we explore the case $\kappa=0$. The case when $\kappa=-1$ is more difficult since it includes $f=\mu$, which is equivalent to the prime number theorem (see Theorem PMNTM ??).

mean0 Theorem 2.9.1. *For any $\kappa\ge 1$ there exists a constant $\beta=\beta(\kappa)\gg\kappa$ such that for any multiplicative function $f(.)$ satisfying $|\Lambda_f(n)|\le\kappa\Lambda(n)$ for all $n\ge 1$,* *we have that if* $\sum_{n\le x}\Lambda_f(n)\le cx/(\log x)^k$ *then*

$$\sum_{n\le x} f(n) \ll (\beta k)^k x(\log x)^{\kappa-1-k}.$$

Trivially we have $|\sum_{n\le x} f(n)|\le\sum_{n\le x} d_\kappa(n)\ll x(\log x)^{\kappa-1}$, so an interpretation of our result states that if the mean value of f on the primes is the trivial bound times $\ll 1/(\log x)^k$, then the mean value of f on the integers is the trivial bound times $\ll_k 1/(\log x)^k$.

Proof. We will assume that $|\sum_{n\le x} f(n)|\le c'(\beta k)^k x(\log x)^{\kappa-1-k}$ for all $x\le 2^m$, and prove the result by induction on m. Evidently we can select c' so that the result is true for all $m<m_0$, so now we assume $m\ge m_0$. Now if $2^m<x\le 2^{m+1}$ and $\Lambda_f(b)\ne 0$ then $x/b\le x/2\le 2^m$, Therefore, selecting $B=x^{1/(\beta k)}$, as $f(n)\log n=\sum_{ab=n} f(a)\Lambda_f(b)$

$$\begin{aligned}\left|\sum_{n\le x} f(n)\log n\right| &\le \sum_{a\le x/B}|f(a)|\left|\sum_{b\le x/a}\Lambda_f(b)\right| + \sum_{b\le B}|\Lambda_f(b)|\left|\sum_{x/B<a\le x/b} f(a)\right|\\ &\le c\sum_{a\le x/B} d_\kappa(a)\frac{x/a}{(\log x/a)^k} + 2c'\kappa(\beta k)^k\sum_{b\le B}\Lambda(b)\frac{x/b}{(\log x/b)^{k+1-\kappa}}\\ &\le c\frac{x}{(\log B)^k}\sum_{a\le x/B}\frac{d_\kappa(a)}{a} + 2c'\kappa(\beta k)^k\frac{x}{(\log x/B)^{k+1-\kappa}}\sum_{b\le B}\frac{\Lambda(b)}{b}\\ &\le c\frac{x(\log x)^\kappa}{(\log B)^k} + 4c'\kappa(\beta k)^k\frac{x\log B}{(\log x/B)^{k+1-\kappa}} \le \frac{c'}{2}(\beta k)^k x(\log x)^{\kappa-1-k}.\end{aligned}$$

The result then follows by partial summation. □

For now, let $G(s):=1/F(s)=\sum_{n\ge 1} g(n)/n^s$, so that $\Lambda_g(n)=-\Lambda_f(n)$.

Exercise 2.9.1. Show that if $\sum_{n\le x}\Lambda_f(n)\le cx/(\log x)^k$ then $\sum_{n\le x} g(n)\ll k^k x/(\log x)^k$. (Hint: Use the relation $\Lambda_g(n)=-\Lambda_f(n)$.)

Exercise 2.9.2. (i) Show that if $\sum_{n\le x}(\Lambda_f(n)+g(n))\le cx/(\log x)^k$ then $\sum_{n\le x} f(n)\ll k^k x/(\log x)^k$. (Hint: Use the convolution $(\Lambda_f+g)*f$.)
(ii) Deduce that if $\psi(x)-x\le cx/(\log x)^k$ then $M(x)\ll k^k x/(\log x)^k$. (Hint: Take $f=\mu$ in (i).)

Exercise 2.9.3. (i) If $\sum_{n\le N}|f_j(n)|\ll N(\log N)^{\alpha_j}$ and $|\sum_{n\le N} f_j(n)|\ll N(\log N)^{\alpha_j-m}$ for $j=1,2$, for some $m>0$, prove that $\sum_{n\le N}|f(n)|\ll N(\log N)^\alpha$ and $|\sum_{n\le N} f(n)|\ll 2^m N(\log N)^{\alpha-m}$ where $f=f_1*f_2$ and $\alpha=\alpha_1+\alpha_2+1$.
(ii) Assume $\sum_{n\le x}\mu(n)\ll_A x/(\log x)^A$ for all A (which we prove in chapter **??**). Suppose that $|\Lambda_f(n)|\le\kappa\Lambda(n)$ and $\sum_{n\le x}\Lambda_f(n)=-x+O(x/(\log x)^m)$. Prove that $\sum_{n\le x} f(n)\ll x(\log x)^{\kappa+1-m}$ (Hint: Apply Theorem 2.9.1 to $f*1$.)
(iii) Suppose that $|\Lambda_f(n)|\le\kappa\Lambda(n)$ and $\sum_{n\le x}\Lambda_f(n)=-rx+O(x/(\log x)^m)$ for some integer $r\ge 1$. Prove that $\sum_{n\le x} f(n)\ll x(\log x)^{\kappa+2r-1-m}$.

2.9.3. A first converse result

By very similar techniques we can get a partial converse to the last result.

THEOREM 2.9.2. *Suppose that* $|\Lambda_f(n)| \leq \kappa\Lambda(n)$ *for all* $n \geq 1$, *and define* $G(s) = 1/F(s)$. *If* $\sum_{n\leq x} f(n) \leq cx/(\log x)^k$ *and* $\sum_{n\leq x} g(n) \leq cx/(\log x)^k$ *then*

$$\sum_{n\leq x} \Lambda_f(n) \ll 2^k \frac{x}{(\log x)^{k-1-\kappa}}.$$

If $f = d_i$ then $g = d_{-i}$, so we can take $k = 1$ in the hypothesis by Selberg's result, but then $\sum_{n\leq x} \Lambda_f(n) \sim ix$ so the exponent cannot be improved to anything bigger than $k-1$.

If f is totally multiplicative then $g(n) = \mu(n)f(n)$. We do not know of any examples in which it is easy to prove that both f and μf have small mean value, so it is difficult to apply the last result, in practice.

PROOF. By partial summation we have

$$\sum_{n\leq x} f(n)\log n \leq c\frac{x}{(\log x)^{k-1}} + c\int_1^x \frac{dt}{(\log t)^k} \leq 2c\frac{x}{(\log x)^{k-1}}.$$

Since $-F'/F = (-F')G$ hence $\Lambda_f(n) = \sum_{ab=n} f(a)\log a\ g(b)$ and so

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{n\leq x}\Lambda_f(n) &= \sum_{a\leq\sqrt{x}} f(a)\log a \sum_{b\leq x/a} g(b) + \sum_{b\leq\sqrt{x}} g(b) \sum_{\sqrt{x}<a\leq x/b} f(a)\log a \\ &\leq c\sum_{a\leq\sqrt{x}} |f(a)|\log a\frac{x/a}{(\log x/a)^k} + 4c\sum_{b\leq\sqrt{x}} |g(b)|\frac{x/b}{(\log\sqrt{x})^{k-1}} \\ &\leq c2^k\frac{x}{(\log x)^{k-1}}\left(\sum_{a\leq\sqrt{x}}\frac{d_\kappa(a)}{a} + 4\sum_{b\leq\sqrt{x}}\frac{d_\kappa(b)}{b}\right) \ll 2^k\frac{x}{(\log x)^{k-1-\kappa}}.\end{aligned}$$

□

Dimitris

2.9.4. The converse theorem

In the Selberg-Delange theorem we saw that if a multiplicative function f is κ on average on the primes, where $|\kappa| \leq 1$, then it has mean value $\gg x/(\log x)^2$ unless $\kappa = 0$ or -1. Could this, in some sense, be an "if and only if" condition? Koukoulopoulos [?] (Koukou2) has recently shown something of this nature. We suppose that

BoundinA

$$\sum_{n\leq x} f(n) \ll \frac{x}{(\log x)^A} \tag{2.9.1}$$

uniformly for all $x \geq 1$, and ask what this implies about f. We begin with a result in the case that f is real-valued:

KoukouConverseReal

THEOREM 2.9.3 (Koukoulopoulos converse theorem, I). *Let f be a real, multiplicative function with* $|f(n)| \leq 1$ *for all* n. *Suppose that* (2.9.1) (BoundinA) *holds for some given* $A > 1$. *Then either,*

(i) $f(p)$ *is close to* 0 *on average, in the sense that*

$$\sum_{p\leq x}\frac{f(p)}{p} \quad \text{is bounded below;}$$

or, if not,

(ii) *$f(p)$ is close to -1 on average, in the very strong sense that*

$$\sum_{p\le x}(1+f(p))\log p \ll \frac{x}{(\log x)^{A-2}}.$$

The exponent "$A-2$" is more-or-less best possible, as is shown by the example $f=d_{-1+\epsilon}$: The Selberg-Delange theorem implies that $\sum_{n\le x} f(n)\asymp x/(\log x)^{2-\epsilon}$, yet neither (i) nor $\sum_{p\le x}(1+f(p))\log p = o(x)$ is satisfied.

Exercise 1.1.15, $f=\mu$, is an example of case (ii). The generic example for case (i) is a real, non-principal, Dirichlet character $f=\chi$; we develop this theory in the next part of the book. In so doing we will be able to establish strong upper bounds on $\sum_{p\le x} f(p)\log p$ under the hypothesis of (i).

L1it EXERCISE 2.9.4. (i) Show that $F(s)$ converges for all s with $\mathrm{Re}(s)\ge 1$ if (2.9.1) holds with $A>1$.
(ii) Show that if $\liminf_{x\to\infty}\mathrm{Re}\Big(\sum_{p\le x}\frac{f(p)}{p^{1+it}}\Big)=-\infty$ then $F(1+it)=0$.

PROOF. If (i) does not hold then $F(1)=0$ by exercise 2.9.4. Define $g=1*f$ so that

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{n\le x} g(n) &= \sum_{a\le\sqrt{x}}\sum_{b\le x/a} f(b) + \sum_{b\le\sqrt{x}} f(b)\sum_{\sqrt{x}<a\le x/b} 1\\ &= O\Big(\sum_{a\le\sqrt{x}}\frac{x/a}{(\log x)^A}\Big)+\sum_{b\le\sqrt{x}} f(b)\Big(\frac{x}{b}-\sqrt{x}+O(1)\Big)\\ &= -x\sum_{b>\sqrt{x}}\frac{f(b)}{b}+O\Big(\frac{x}{(\log x)^{A-1}}\Big)\ll\frac{x}{(\log x)^{A-1}}\end{aligned}$$

using that $F(1)=\sum_{b\ge1} f(b)/b=0$, and partial summation with (2.9.1). Now, by definition, $g(n)\ge 0$ for all n, and $g(p)=1+f(p)$, so that $\sum_{p\le x}(1+f(p))\log p = \sum_{p\le x} g(p)\log p\le\sum_{n\le x} g(n)\log x$ and the result follows. □

It is slightly more complicated to prove such a result in the case that f can take complex values, since instead of considering $1*f$, we now consider $(1*h)*(1*\overline{h})$ where $h(n)=f(n)/n^{it}$.

DirPos EXERCISE 2.9.5. Suppose that $|\Lambda_h(n)|\le\Lambda(n)$ for all $n\ge1$. Prove that

(i) If $h(n)\in\mathbb{R}$ and $f=1*h$ then each $0\le\Lambda_f(n)\le 2\Lambda(n)$, and each $f(n)\ge0$.
(ii) If $f=(1*h)*(1*\overline{h})$ then each $0\le\Lambda_f(n)\le4\Lambda(n)$, and each $f(n)\ge0$.

KoukouConverse THEOREM 2.9.4 (Koukoulopoulos converse theorem, II). *Let f be a multiplicative function with $|\Lambda_f(n)|\le\Lambda(n)$ for all $n\ge1$. Suppose that (2.9.1) holds for some given $A>4$. Then either,*
(i) *$f(p)$ is close to 0 on average, in the sense that*

$$\sum_{p\le x}\frac{\mathrm{Re}(f(p)p^{-it})}{p}\quad\text{is bounded below}$$

for every real number t (where the bound may depend on t); or, if not,

(ii) *$f(p)$ is close to $-p^{it}$ on average, in the very strong sense that*

$$\sum_{p\le x}(1+\mathrm{Re}(f(p)p^{-it}))\log p \ll_{|t|} \frac{x}{(\log x)^{A-2}}.$$

PROOF. If (i) does not hold let $h(n)=f(n)n^{-it}$, so that $H(1)=F(1+it)=0$ by exercise 2.9.4. By partial summation we have

$$\sum_{n\le x} h(n) = x^{-it}\sum_{n\le x} f(n) + it\int_1^x \sum_{n\le y} f(n)\ y^{-1-it}dy \ll (1+|t|)\ \frac{x}{(\log x)^{A}}.$$

Now applying the proof in Theorem 2.9.3 to $g=1*h$ we obtain

$$\sum_{n\le x} g(n) \ll (1+|t|)\ \frac{x}{(\log x)^{A-1}},$$

and the analogous result with g replaced by $\overline{g}$. If we define $G=g*\overline{g}$ then, since $|g(n)|\le d(n)$

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{n\le x} G(n) &= \sum_{a\le\sqrt{x}} g(a)\sum_{b\le x/a}\overline{g(b)} + \sum_{b\le\sqrt{x}}\overline{g(b)}\sum_{\sqrt{x}<a\le x/b} g(a)\\ &= (1+|t|)\sum_{a\le\sqrt{x}}|g(a)|\frac{x/a}{(\log x)^{A-1}}\\ &\ll (1+|t|)\frac{x}{(\log x)^{A-1}}\exp\Big(\sum_{p\le\sqrt{x}}\frac{|g(p)|}{p}\Big).\end{aligned}$$

Now $G(n)\ge 0$ for all n by exercise 2.9.5, and $G(p)=2(1+\mathrm{Re}(h(p)))$, so that

$$2\sum_{p\le x}(1+\mathrm{Re}(h(p))) = \sum_{p\le x} G(p) \le \sum_{n\le x} G(n) \ll (1+|t|)\frac{x}{(\log x)^{A-1}}\exp\Big(\sum_{p\le\sqrt{x}}\frac{|1+h(p)|}{p}\Big).$$

Now each $|h(p)|\le 1$, so the right hand side is $\ll_t x/(\log x)^{A-3}$. By Cauchy-Schwarz we deduce, since $|1+h(p)|^2 = 1+|h(p)|^2+2\mathrm{Re}(h(p)) \le 2(1+\mathrm{Re}(h(p)))$, that

$$\Big(\sum_{p\le x}|1+h(p)|\Big)^2 \le \sum_{p\le x}1\cdot 2\sum_{p\le x}(1+\mathrm{Re}(h(p))) \ll \frac{x^2}{(\log x)^{A-2}},$$

and therefore, by partial summation, if $A>4$ then

$$\sum_{p\le x}\frac{|1+h(p)|}{p} \ll 1.$$

Substituting this in two equations above, the result follows. □

In [?], Koukoulopoulos proves the result for any $A>2$, which is essentially best possible, by extending this proof a little further.

EXERCISE 2.9.6. Show that if $\sum_{n\le x} f(n) = o(x/(\log x)^4)$ then the bound in (ii) is $o(x/(\log x)^2)$.

2.9.5. Siegel's Theorem when we have a small mean value

Exercise 2.9.7. Suppose that $\eta, 0 < \eta < 1$ and $\gamma_\eta := \zeta(1-\eta) + 1/\eta$. Use exercise zeta2 1.1.6 to show that

$$\Big|\sum_{m\le x} \frac{1}{m^{1-\eta}} - \frac{x^\eta - 1}{\eta} - \gamma_\eta\Big| \le \frac{1}{x^{1-\eta}}$$

Also show that $1 \ge \sum_{m\le x} \frac{1}{m^{1-\eta}} - \frac{x^\eta-1}{\eta} \ge 0$ so that $0 \le \gamma_\eta \le 1 < 1/\eta$.

Siegel1

Proposition 2.9.5. *Let f be a real-valued completely multiplicative function with $-1 \le f(n) \le 1$ for all n. Assume that for some $0 < \theta \le 1$ there exists a constant $q \ge 2$ such that*

PowerWin

$$\sum_{n\le x} f(n) \le q x^{1-\theta}. \tag{2.9.2}$$

(i) If $F(s) \ne 0$ for real s, $1 - \frac{1}{\log q} \le s \le 1$ then $F(1) \gg 1/\log q$.
(ii) If $F(1-\eta) = 0$ for some $\eta \in (0, 1/\log q)$ then $F(1) \gg \eta$.

Proof. By partial summation we have, by (PowerWin 2.9.2), that for any fixed $\tau \in (1-\theta, 1]$,

$$\sum_{n>x} \frac{f(n)}{n^\tau} \ll q x^{1-\theta-\tau}.$$

This implies that $F(s)$ converges for all real $s > 1-\theta$. Let $g = 1 * f$, so that $1 \ge g(n) \ge 0$ for all n. Assume $0 < \eta < \theta$. Hence, for $DM = x$,

$$\begin{aligned}
1 \le \sum_{n\le x} \frac{g(n)}{n^{1-\eta}} &= \sum_{d\le D} \frac{f(d)}{d^{1-\eta}} \sum_{m\le x/d} \frac{1}{m^{1-\eta}} + \sum_{m\le M} \frac{1}{m^{1-\eta}} \sum_{D<d\le x/m} \frac{f(d)}{d^{1-\eta}} \\
&= \sum_{d\le D} \frac{f(d)}{d^{1-\eta}} \Big(\frac{(x/d)^\eta - 1}{\eta} + \gamma_\eta + O\Big(\frac{d^{1-\eta}}{x^{1-\eta}}\Big)\Big) + O\Big(\sum_{m\le M} \frac{1}{m^{1-\eta}} q D^{\eta-\theta}\Big) \\
&= \frac{x^\eta}{\eta} \sum_{d\le D} \frac{f(d)}{d} + \Big(\gamma_\eta - \frac{1}{\eta}\Big) \sum_{d\le D} \frac{f(d)}{d^{1-\eta}} + O\Big(\frac{D}{x^{1-\eta}} + \frac{q}{\eta} M^\eta D^{\eta-\theta}\Big) \\
&= \frac{x^\eta}{\eta} F(1) + \Big(\gamma_\eta - \frac{1}{\eta}\Big) F(1-\eta) + O\Big(\Big(\frac{q}{\eta}\Big)^{\frac{1}{1+\theta}} x^{\eta - \frac{\theta}{1+\theta}}\Big)
\end{aligned}$$

choosing $D = (qx/\eta)^{1/(1+\theta)}$.

Now since $F(s) = \prod_p (1 - f(p)p^{-s})^{-1}$ for $\mathrm{Re}(s) > 1$ we see that $F(s) > 0$ for real $s > 1$. If $F(s) \ne 0$ for all $s, 1-\eta < s \le 1$ then $F(1-\eta) \ge 0$, by continuity, and thus $\Big(\gamma_\eta - \frac{1}{\eta}\Big) F(1-\eta) \le 0$ as $\gamma_\eta < 1/\eta$. Therefore

$$F(1) \ge \eta x^{-\eta} + O(q/(qx/\eta)^{\theta/(1+\theta)})$$

If $F(s) \ne 0$ for real s, $1 - \frac{1}{\log q} \le s \le 1$, select $x = (q \log q)^{C/\theta}$ for a large constant C, and $\eta = 1/\log q$, so that $F(1) \gg 1/\log q$.

If $F(1-\eta) = 0$ for some $\eta \in (0, 1/\log q)$ then select $x = (Cq/\eta)^{1/\theta}$ for a large constant C, so that $F(1) \gg \eta$. $\square$